

# ARCHIVED



Department of  
Building and Housing  
*Te Tari Kaupapa Whare*

Dear Customer

Please find enclosed Amendment 12, effective 10 October 2011, to the New Zealand Building Code Handbook.

<b>Section</b>	<b>Old Handbook</b>	<b>October 2011 Amendments to Handbook</b>
Title pages	Remove title pages and document history	Replace with new title pages and document history
Preface	Remove pages 5/6, 7/8	Replace with new pages 5/6, 7/8
References	Remove pages 79-104B	Replace with new pages 79-104B
Definitions	Remove pages 107-110, 113-116, 119-122, 127/128, 135-140, 143-148, 148C-148F	Replace with new pages 107-110, 113-116, 119-122, 127/128, 135-140, 143-148, 148C-148F
Index	Remove pages 149-208	Replace with new pages 149-208

ARCHIVED

## New Zealand Building Code Handbook Third Edition

Prepared by the Department of Building and Housing

This Compliance Document is prepared by the Department of Building and Housing. The Department of Building and Housing is a Government Department established under the State Sector Act 1988.

Enquiries about the content of this document should be directed to:



Department of  
Building and Housing  
*Te Tari Kaupapa Whare*

Department of Building and Housing  
PO Box 10-729, Wellington.  
Telephone 0800 242 243  
Fax 04 494 0290  
Email: [info@dbh.govt.nz](mailto:info@dbh.govt.nz)

**Compliance Documents are available from [www.dbh.govt.nz](http://www.dbh.govt.nz)**

### New Zealand Government

© Department of Building and Housing 2011

This Compliance Document is protected by Crown copyright, unless indicated otherwise. The Department of Building and Housing administers the copyright in this document. You may use and reproduce this document for your personal use or for the purposes of your business provided you reproduce the document accurately and not in an inappropriate or misleading context. You may not distribute this document to others or reproduce it for sale or profit.

The Department of Building and Housing owns or has licences to use all images and trademarks in this document. You must not use or reproduce images and trademarks featured in this document for any purpose (except as part of an accurate reproduction of this document) unless you first obtain the written permission of the Department of Building and Housing.

<b>Handbook: Document History</b>		
	<b>Date</b>	<b>Alterations</b>
First published	July 1992	
Third edition	25 May 2007	
Amendment 11	Published 31 July 2010 Effective 30 September 2010	pp. 6–8, 11 Preface pp. 17–78, Code Clauses – amended and reformatted pp. 79–104A, References – amended and reprinted pp. 105–148f, Definitions – amended and reprinted pp. 150–158, 161–164, 168–170, 172, 176–178, 181, 184–185 187, 189, 191, 193, 196–199, 201, 204–208, Index
Amendment 12	10 October 2011	p. 6, Preface pp. 80–100, 102–104A, References pp. 108, 113 –115, 119–120, 122, 125 128, 136, 138, 144, 146–147, 148d–f, Definitions pp. 149–208, Index

**Note:** Page numbers relate to the document at the time of Amendment and may not match page numbers in current document.

## Document Status

The most recent version of this document, as detailed in the Document History, is approved by the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing. It is effective from 10 October 2011 and supersedes all previous versions of this document.

People using this document should check for amendments on a regular basis. The Department of Building and Housing may amend any part of any document at any time. Up-to-date versions of documents are available from [www.dbh.govt.nz](http://www.dbh.govt.nz)

- Buildings need to be durable.
- Special traditional and cultural aspects of the intended use of a building need to be recognised.
- The whole-of-life costs of a building need to be considered.
- Standards are important in achieving compliance with the Building Code for building design and construction.
- Innovation in methods of building design and construction is important.
- People who undertake a rescue operation or firefighting in a building need to be able to expect a reasonable level of protection from injury or illness while doing so.
- The extent and effects of the spread of fire need to be limited to protect other household units and other property.
- Other property needs to be protected from physical damage resulting from the construction, use and demolition of a building.
- People with disabilities need to be able to enter and carry out normal activities and processes in a building.
- Buildings of significant cultural, historical or heritage value need to be preserved.
- Energy use in buildings needs to be efficient.
- The use of renewable sources of energy needs to be encouraged.
- Material use in buildings needs to be efficient and sustainable.
- Water use in buildings needs to be efficient and promote water conservation.
- Waste generated during the construction process needs to be reduced.

### 2.1.3 Application

The Building Act applies to:

- building construction, alteration, demolition or removal
- maintenance of a building's specified systems, such as lifts and fire protection installations.

The Building Act does not cover:

- planning and resource management
- occupational safety and health.

### 2.1.4 Structure

The Building Act has five parts.

**Part 1:** Contains the purpose and principles of the Building Act, together with an overview, commencement dates for various Provisions and definitions. These sections provide an important reference when reading and interpreting the Building Act.

**Part 2 (and Schedules 1 and 2):** Outlines matters relating to the Building Code and building control (such as building consents), including requirements of building work, requirements for the use of buildings, Provisions for certain categories of buildings and Provisions for the safety of dams.

**Part 3:** Sets out the functions, duties and powers of the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing (the Department), territorial authorities, regional authorities and building consent authorities. It also deals with the accreditation and registration of building consent authorities, accreditation of dam owners, and product certification.

**Part 4 (and Schedule 3):** Covers matters relating to the licensing and disciplining of building practitioners.

**Part 5 (and Schedule 4):** Describes miscellaneous matters, including offences and criminal proceedings, implied terms of contracts, regulation-making powers, amendments to other enactments and the repeal of the former Act, and the transitional Provisions from the former Act to the Building Act.

## 2.2 Building Regulations

Building Regulations are made under and in accordance with the Building Act.

A number of regulations have been made under the Building Act. Currently (as at May 2007) there are seven sets of regulations.

1. **Building Regulations 1992**, made under the former Act and which include the Building Code. These regulations have been amended by the Building (Forms) Regulations 2004 so that only certain parts remain in force. Parts still in force are: Schedule 1 (Building Code), Regulation 3, Forms 16 & 17 (and Regulation 4 and Schedule 2 where they relate to these forms).
2. **Building (Forms) Regulations 2004**, as amended by the Building (Forms) Amendment Regulations 2005, which prescribes forms to be used under the Building Act.
3. **Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-prone Buildings) Regulations 2005**, as amended by the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Amendment Regulations 2005. These regulations outline and define the following terms.
  - Specified systems – the building systems that must be listed on compliance schedules and are subject to specific inspection and maintenance procedures. Schedule 1 provides the list of specified systems.
  - Change the use – to determine when a change in a building's use will require upgrading to meet certain requirements of the Building Act. Schedule 2 determines the use of all or parts of buildings.
  - Moderate earthquake – to define a moderate earthquake in relation to a building.
4. **Building (Fee for Determinations) Regulations 2005**
5. **Building Levy Order 2005**
6. **Building (Accreditation of Building**

Consent Authorities) Regulations 2006

7. **Building (Consent Authority Accreditation Fees) Regulations 2007**
8. **Building (Designation of Building work Licence Classes) Order 2007**
9. **Building (Design Work Declared to be Building Work) Order 2007**
10. **Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2007**
11. **Building (Registration of Building Consent Authorities) Regulations 2007**
12. **Building (Infringement Offences, Fees, and Forms) Regulations 2007**
13. **Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2008**
14. **Building (Dam Safety) Regulations 2008**
15. **Building Practitioners (Complaints and Disciplinary Procedures) Regulations 2008**
16. **Building (Product Certification) Regulations 2008**
17. **Building (Building Consent Authority Transition) Order 2008**
18. **Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2009**
19. **Building (Minor Variations) Regulations 2009**
20. **Building (Designation of Building Work Licensing Classes) Order 2010**
21. **Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2010**
22. **Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2010**
23. **Canterbury Earthquake (Building Act) order 2010**
24. **Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2011**

Note: these regulations can be found at [www.legislation.govt.nz](http://www.legislation.govt.nz)

## 2.3 The New Zealand Building Code

The Building Code is contained in Schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992. The Building Code contains compulsory rules for all new building work.

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

2.3.1 Content

The Building Code sets out performance criteria that building work must meet. It covers aspects such as structural stability, fire safety, access, moisture control, durability, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The Building Code does not prescribe how work should be done, but states how completed building work and its parts must perform.

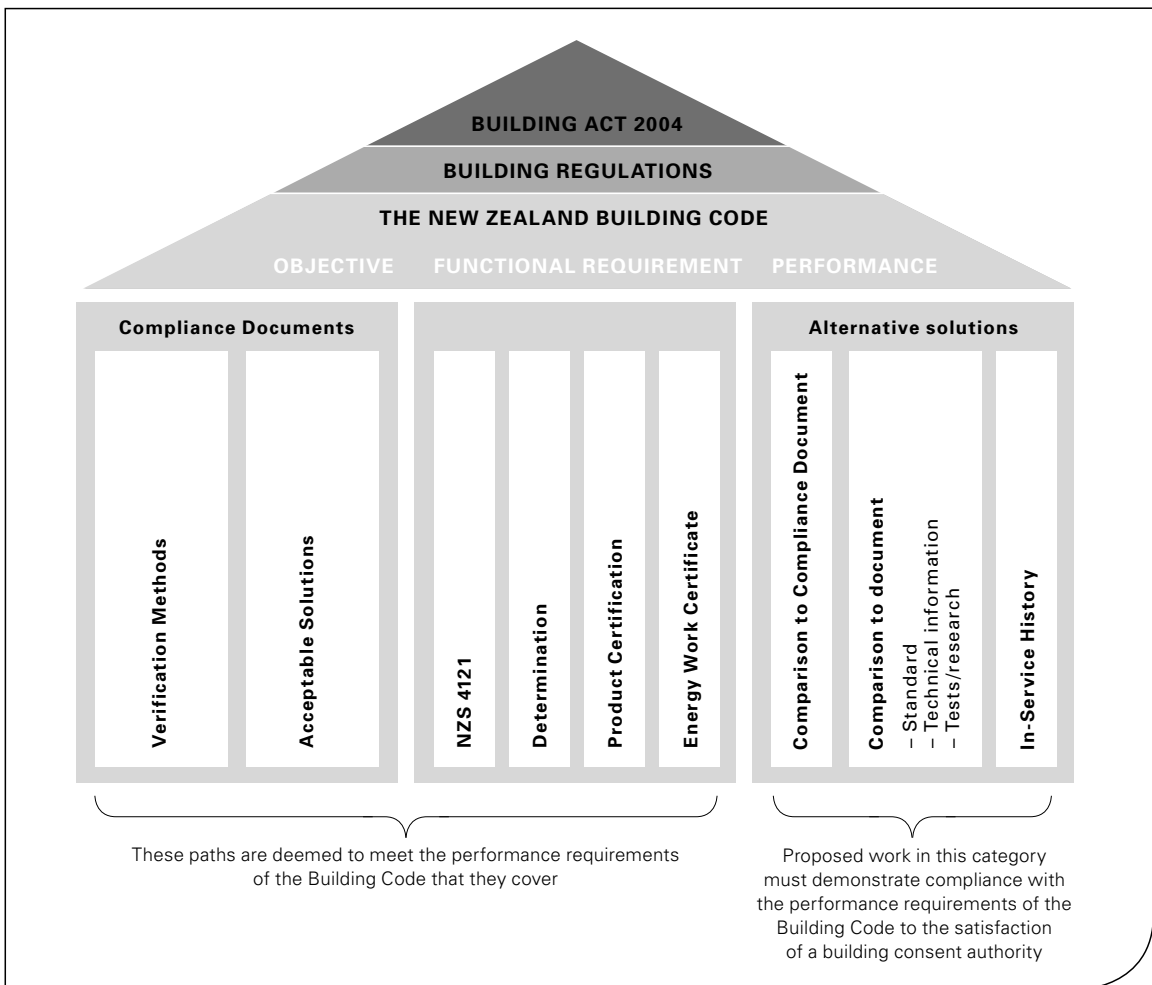
An advantage of a performance-based Building Code is flexibility. It contains no prescriptive requirements stipulating that certain products or designs must be used. This flexibility allows developments and innovation in building design, technology and systems.

2.3.2 Structure

The Building Code consists of two preliminary clauses and 35 technical clauses. Each technical clause has three levels that describe the requirements for the clause and is listed below.

1. **Objective** Social objectives the building must achieve.
2. **Functional requirement** Functions the building must perform to meet the Objective.
3. **Performance** The performance criteria the building must achieve. By meeting the performance criteria, the Objective and Functional requirement can be achieved.

Amend 11  
Sep 2010



### 3.0 COMPLIANCE PATHS

Compliance with the Building Code can be demonstrated using various pathways. Understanding the New Zealand building control framework will help a building consent applicant decide which path is most suitable when designing and constructing building work.

The diagram below illustrates the hierarchy of New Zealand building controls, including the various compliance paths.

The top three tiers of the pyramid (the Building Act and Building Regulations) show mandatory building legislation that must be followed, as explained in the previous section.

The rest of the diagram shows various paths that may be used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Code. Compliance with the Building Code must be demonstrated using one or more of the paths. The applicant can choose which path(s) to follow.

With the exception of **alternative solutions**, the paths illustrated on the previous page must be accepted by the building consent authority as meeting the performance requirements of the Building Code. These pathways are discussed below.

#### 3.1 Compliance Documents

Compliance Documents provide details for construction that, if followed, result in compliance with the Building Code. They are published by the Department. (Note: Compliance Documents were previously known as Approved Documents, and were published by the former Building Industry Authority.)

A design that complies with Compliance Documents must be accepted by a building consent authority as complying with the Building Code.

There is one Compliance Document for each of the 35 technical clauses in the Building Code. Each Compliance Document contains at least a Verification Method or an Acceptable Solution, and usually has both. However, some Compliance Documents have more than one Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example, the Compliance Document for Clause B1 of the Building Code has two Verification Methods and three Acceptable Solutions.

Verification Methods and Acceptable Solutions are usually referred to by their Building Code clauses and unique identification numbers. Some examples are listed below.

- The Acceptable Solutions for Clause E2 **External Moisture** are known as **E2/AS1**, **E2/AS2** and **E2/AS3**.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G4 **Ventilation** is known as **G4/AS1**.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G1 **Personal Hygiene** is known as **G1/AS1**.
- The Verification Methods for Clause B1 **Structure** are known as **B1/VM1** and **B1/VM4**.

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

#### 3.1.1 Verification Methods

Verification Methods are tests or calculation methods that prescribe one way to comply with the Building Code. Verification Methods can include:

- calculation methods: using recognised analytical methods and mathematical models
- laboratory tests: using tests (sometimes to destruction) on prototype components and systems
- tests-in-situ: which may involve examination of plans and verification by test, where compliance with specified numbers, dimensions or locations is required (non-destructive tests, such as pipe pressure tests, are also included).

#### 3.1.2 Acceptable Solutions

These are simple step-by-step instructions that show one way to comply with the Building Code.

#### 3.2 Product certification

The Building Act contains provisions for a voluntary product certification scheme that will enable product manufacturers to have their products certified as meeting nominated Performance requirements of the Building Code.



# Publications Referenced in Handbook and Compliance Documents

For the purposes of New Zealand Building Code compliance, acceptable reference documents include only the quoted edition and specific amendments as listed below.

Dates in brackets indicate that the Standard was reviewed and reissued without change that year.

Compliance Documents in which the particular references are quoted are identified by the relevant Building Code Clause and the number of the Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example: **B1/VM1/AS3** indicates that the reference occurs in Verification Method 1, and Acceptable Solution 3 of the Compliance Document for Clause B1 Structure.

Where references are quoted in the Compliance Schedule Handbook, these are identified by the letters HB and the relevant section. For example: HB/SS 3 indicates that the reference occurs in the content guide for SS 3 in the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

Places where the reference documents are quoted, are more specifically identified by paragraph or table, in the reference list contained in each Compliance Document.

<b>Contents</b>	<b>Page</b>
Standards New Zealand	79
Standards Australia	91
British Standards Institution	95
New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)	98
Australian Publications (other than Standards)	100
Australia/New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)	100
British Publications (other than Standards)	101
International Publications	101
US Publications	103

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

## Standards New Zealand

---

NZS/BS 21: 1985 Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions)  
*Amend: 1*

## Where quoted

**G10/AS1, G14/VM1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

		Where quoted	
	NZS/BS 476:- Part 20: 1987	Fire tests on building materials and structures Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles) <i>Amend: 6487</i>	<b>C/AS1</b> <b>C/AS1</b>
	Part 21: 1987	Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction	<b>C/AS1</b>
	Part 22: 1987	Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction	<b>C/AS1</b>
	NZS/BS 970:- Part 1: 1991	Specification for wrought steels for mechanical and allied engineering purposes General inspection and testing procedures and specific requirements for carbon, carbon manganese, alloy and stainless steels <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>E1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 1170: Part 5: 2004	Structural Design Actions Earthquake design actions – New Zealand standard	<b>B1/VM1, G12/AS2</b>
	AS/NZS 1170: Part 0: 2002	Structural Design Actions General principles <i>Amends: 1, 2 and 4</i>	<b>B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, C/AS1, G12/AS2</b> <b>G10/AS1</b>
	Part 1: 2002	Permanent, imposed and other actions <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2</b>
	Part 2: 2002	Wind Actions <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 3: 2003	Snow and ice actions <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2</b>
	AS/NZS 1221: 1997	Fire hose reels <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>C/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1254: 2002	Unplasticised PVC pipes and fittings for storm and surface water applications	<b>E1/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1260: 2002	PVC pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1260: 2009	PVC-U Pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent application	<b>E1/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2,</b> <b>G14/VM1</b>
	NZS/BS 1387: 1985 (1990)	Specification for screwed and socketed steel tubes and tubulars and for plain end steel tubes suitable for welding or screwing to BS 21 pipe threads <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G10/AS1, G12/AS1,</b> <b>G14/VM1</b>
	AS 1397: 2001	Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dipped zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated	<b>E1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1477: 2006	PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
	AS/NZS 1530:- Part 3: 1999	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke release	<b>C/AS1</b>

		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1546: 2008 On-site domestic wastewater treatment units Part 1: Septic tanks	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	AS/NZS 1547: 2000 On-site domestic wastewater management	<b>G13/VM4</b>
	AS/NZS 1604: Specification for preservative treatment Part 3: 2002 Plywood	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes	<b>G13/AS2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS/AS 1657: 1992 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders – Design, construction and installation (known as the SAA Code for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways, and ladders)	<b>D1/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1664:- Aluminium structures Part 1: 1997 Limit state design <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1668:- The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings Part 1: 1998 Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings	<b>C/AS1, F7/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1680: Interior and workplace lighting Part 1: 2006 General principles and recommendations	<b>F6/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1730: 1996 Washbasins	<b>G1/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1734: 1997 Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate	<b>E1/AS1, E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1748: 1997 Timber – Stress graded – Product requirements for mechanically stress-graded timber	<b>B1/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1859 Reconstituted wood-based panels Part 1: 2002 Particleboard	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 1905:- Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls Part 1: 1997 Fire-resistant doorsets	<b>HB/SS 15</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2023: 1995 Baths for ablutionary purposes	<b>G1/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 2032: 2006 Installation of PVC pipe systems <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2/AS3, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

	NZS/AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G14/AS1</b>
Amends 11 and 12		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2243:1 2005 Safety in laboratories – Planning and operational aspects	<b>HB/SS 11</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2243:8 2006 Safety in laboratories – Fume cupboards	<b>HB/SS 11</b>
	AS/NZS 2269: 2004 Plywood – Structural	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 2269: 2008 Plywood – Structural	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amends 11 and 12	AS/NZS 2280: 2004 Ductile iron pressure pipes and fittings <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>E1/AS1, G13/AS2</b>
	AS/NZS 2293:- Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance	<b>HB/SS 4</b>
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 2295: 2006 Pliable, permeable building underlays	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	AS/NZS 2566: 2002 Buried Flexible pipelines. Part 1: 1998 Structural Design Part 2: 2002 Installation	<b>B1/AS1, E1/AS1 B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2 SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	AS/NZS 2588: 1998 Gypsum plasterboard	
	AS/NZS 2642:- Polybutylene pipe systems	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 1: 2007 Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amends 11 and 12	Part 2: 2008 Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications	<b>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
Amends 11 and 12	Part 3: 2008 Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	AS/NZS 2699: Built-in components for masonry construction. Part 1: 2000 Wall ties Part 2: 2000 Connectors and accessories Part 3: 2002 Lintels and shelf angles (durability requirements)	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 2712: 2002 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and (until 1 July 2009) construction	<b>G12/AS2</b>
	AS/NZS 2712: 2007 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction	<b>G12/AS2, SH/AS1</b>

 Modified  
 1 Aug 2011

		<b>Where quoted</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2728: 2007 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications – Performance requirements	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2845:- Part 1: 2010	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Water supply Materials, design and performance requirements	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2904: 1995 Damp-proof courses and flashings	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2908: Part 2: 2000	<b>B1/AS3 C/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	Cellulose-cement products Flat sheet	
	AS/NZS 2918: 2001 Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – installation	<b>G9/VM1/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 3000: 2007 Electrical installations <i>Amend: 1</i>	
	NZS 3101:- Part 1: 2006	<b>B2/AS1</b> <b>B1/VM1</b>
	Concrete structures standard The design of concrete structures <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
	NZS 3106: 2009	<b>B1/VM1, G14/VM1</b>
	Design of concrete structures for the storage of liquids	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3109: 1997	<b>B1/AS3, SH/AS1</b>
	Specification for concrete construction <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
	NZS 3112:- Part 2: 1986	<b>B1/AS3</b>
	Methods of test for concrete Tests relating to the determination of strength of concrete <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3114: 1987	<b>D1/AS1, G15/AS1</b>
	Specification for concrete surface finishes <i>Amend: 1</i>	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3116: 2002	<b>D1/AS1</b>
	Concrete segmental and flagstone paving <i>Amend: 1</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	<b>G12/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3404:- Part 1: 1997	<b>B1/VM1</b>
	Steel structures standard Steel structures standard <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

		Where quoted
	AS/NZS 3500:- Part 1: 2003 <i>National plumbing and drainage code Water services Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/VM1/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 2003 <i>Sanitary plumbing and drainage Amend: 1</i>	<b>G13/AS1/VM2/AS2/ AS3</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 4: 2003 <i>Heated water services Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/VM1/AS1/AS2</b>
	Part 5: 2003 <i>Domestic installation</i>	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 3501: 1976 <i>Specification for copper tubes for water, gas, and sanitation Amend: 1, 2 and 3</i>	<b>G10/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2 G12/AS1</b>
	NZS 3502: 1976 <i>Specification for copper and copper alloy tubes for general engineering purposes</i>	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3518: 2004 <i>Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) compounds pipes and fittings for pressure applications Amend: 1</i>	<b>G13/AS2, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	NZS/BS 3601: 1987 <i>Specification for carbon steel pipes and tubes (1993) with specified room temperature properties for pressure purposes Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3602:-  Part 1: 2003 <i>Timber and wood-based products for use in building</i>	<b>B2/AS1, E2/AS1 SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 3603: 1993 <i>Timber structures standard Amend: 1, 2 (Applies to building work consented prior to 1 April 2007) Amend: 1, 2, 4 (Applies to building work consented on or after 1 April 2007)</i>	<b>B1/VM1/VM4</b>  <b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3604: 1990 <i>Timber framed buildings</i>	<b>G12/AS2</b>
	NZS 3604: 1999 <i>Timber framed buildings Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>B2/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS2, G13/AS2, SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 3604: 2011 <i>Timber framed buildings</i>	<b>B1/AS1/AS3, E2/VM1/AS1/AS2 G12/AS2</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3605: 2001 <i>Timber piles and poles for use in building</i>	<b>B1/VM4, SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 3617: 1979 <i>Specification for profiles of weatherboards, fascia boards, and flooring</i>	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3622: 2004 <i>Verification of timber properties Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1, SH/AS1</b>

		<b>Where quoted</b>	
	NZS 3631: 1988	New Zealand timber grading rules	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>B1/VM4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 4</i>	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	<b>B2/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 3661:-	Slip resistance of pedestrian surfaces	
	Part 1: 1993	Requirements	<b>D1/VM1/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 1994	Guide to the reduction of slip hazards	<b>D1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3666:-	Air-handling and water systems of buildings – Microbial Control	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2002	Design, installation and commissioning	<b>G4/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 2002	Operation and maintenance	<b>G4/AS1, HB/SS 9</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 3: 2000	Performance-based maintenance of cooling water systems	<b>HB/SS 9</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS/AS 3725: 2007	Design for installation of buried concrete pipes	<b>B1/VM1</b>
	AS/NZS 3837: 1998	Method of test for heat and smoke release rates for materials and products using an oxygen consumption calorimeter	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3869: 1999	Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – Design and construction	<b>B1/AS3</b>
	AS/NZS 3896: 1998	Waters – Examination for legionellae including <i>Legionella pneumophila</i> <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>HB/SS 9</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4020: 2005	Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water	<b>E2/AS1, G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4058: 2007	Pre cast concrete pipes(pressure and non-pressure)	<b>B1/VM1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4121: 2001	Design for access and mobility – Buildings and associated facilities	<b>D1/AS1, G1/AS1, G5/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amends 11 and 12	AS/NZS 4129: 2008	Fillings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications	<b>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4130: 2003	Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>E1/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4130: 2009	Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4200:	Pliable building membranes and underlays	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	Part 1: 1994	Materials <i>Amend: 1</i>	

			Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4203: 1992	Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings <i>Corrigendum: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS2</b>
	NZS 4206: 1992	Concrete interlocking roofing tiles	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4210: 2001	Code of practice for masonry construction: materials and workmanship <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/AS3, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4211: 1985	Specification for performance of windows <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3</i>	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 4211: 2008	Specification for performance of windows	<b>B1/VM1, E2/VM1/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4214: 2006	Methods of determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings	<b>E3/AS1, G5/AS1, H1/VM1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4217:-	Pressed metal tile roofs	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 1980	Specification for roofing tiles and their accessories	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 1980	Code of practice for preparation of the structure and the laying and fixing of metal roofing tiles	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4218: 2004	Energy efficiency – housing and small building envelope	<b>H1/VM1/AS1</b>
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 4219: 1983	Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4219: 2009	Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings	<b>B1/VM1</b>
	NZS 4223:-	Code of practice for glazing in buildings	
	Part 1: 2008	Glass selection and glazing	<b>B1/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1985	The selection and installation of manufactured sealed insulating glass units <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>B1/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	Part 3: 1999	Human impact safety requirements	<b>B1/AS1, F2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 4: 2008	Wind, dead, snow, and live actions	<b>B1/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 4229: 1999	Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/AS1/AS3, E1/AS1, G13/AS2</b>



		<b>Where quoted</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4230: 2004 Design of reinforced concrete masonry structures <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1</b>
	NZS 4231: 1985 Specification for self-luminous exit signs <i>Amend: A</i>	<b>F8/AS1</b>
	NZS 4232:- Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures Part 2: 1988 Fire resisting glazing systems	<b>HB/SS 15</b> <b>C/AS1</b>
	NZS HB 4236: 2002 Masonary veneer wall cladding	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	NZS 4239: 1993 Automatic sliding door assemblies <i>Amend: A</i>	<b>HB/SS 3</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4243: Energy efficiency – large buildings Part 1: 2007 Building thermal envelope Part 2: 2007 Lighting	<b>H1/VM1/AS1</b> <b>H1/VM1/AS1</b>
	NZS 4246: 2006 Energy efficiency – Installing insulation in residential buildings	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4251:- Solid plastering Part 1: 2007 Cement plaster for walls, ceilings and soffits	<b>B1/AS1, B2/AS1,</b> <b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4256: Plastic roof and wall cladding materials Part 2: 1994 Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4284: 2008 Testing of building facades	<b>E2/VM1</b>
	NZS 4297: 1998 Engineering design for earth buildings	<b>B1/VM1, B2/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4298: 1998 Materials and workmanship for earth buildings <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>E2/AS2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4299: 1998 Earth buildings not requiring specific design <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/AS1, B2/AS1,</b> <b>E2/AS2</b>
	NZS 4303: 1990 Ventilation for acceptable indoor air quality	<b>G4/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4304: 2002 Health care waste management	<b>G15/AS1</b>
	NZS 4305: 1996 Energy efficiency – domestic type hot water systems	<b>H1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4331: 1995 Metallic flanges Part 1: Steel flanges Part 2: Cast iron flanges Part 3: Copper alloy and composite flanges	<b>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</b> <b>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</b> <b>G14/VM1</b>
	NZS 4332: 1997 Non-domestic passenger and goods lifts	<b>D2/AS1, F6/AS1,</b> <b>HB/SS 8</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4401: 2006 High density polyethylene (PE-HD) pipes and fittings for soil and waste discharge (low and high temperature) systems inside buildings	<b>G13/AS1, G14/VM1</b>

		<b>Where quoted</b>
	NZS 4402:- Methods of testing soils for civil engineering purposes	<b>B1/VM1</b>
	Part 2:- Soil classification tests	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Test 2.2: 1986 Determination of the liquid limit	<b>B1/Defs, SH/AS1</b>
	Test 2.6: 1986 Determination of the linear shrinkage	<b>B1/Defs</b>
	Part 4:- Soil compaction tests	
	Test 4.2.3: 1988 Related densities	<b>B1/VM4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4431: 1989 Code of practice for earth fill for residential development <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM1, E2/AS2 SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 4442: 1988 Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas	<b>E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1</b>
	AS/NZS 4455: 1997 Masonry units and segmental pavers	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 4456: 2003 Masonry unit and segmental pavers – Methods of test <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 4503: 2005 Hand operated fire fighting equipment	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4510: 2008 Fire hydrant systems for buildings <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>C/AS1, HB/SS 6</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	NZS 4512: 2010 Fire detection and alarm systems in buildings	<b>C/AS1, HB/SS 2, HB/SS 15, F7/AS1</b>
	NZS 4515: 2009 Fire sprinkler systems for life safety in sleeping occupancies (up to 2000 m <sup>2</sup> )	<b>C/AS1, HB/SS 1, F7/AS1</b>
	NZS 4520: 2010 Fire resistant doorsets	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4534: 2006 Zinc and zinc/aluminium-alloy coatings on steel wire	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	NZS 4541: 2007 Automatic fire sprinkler systems <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>C/AS1, F7/AS1 HB/SS 1</b>
	AS/NZS 4586: 2004 Slip resistance classification of new pedestrian surface materials	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4600: 2005 Cold-formed steel structures	<b>B1/VM1</b>
	NZS 4602: 1988 Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4603: 1985 Installation of low pressure thermal storage electric water heaters with copper cylinders (open vented systems) <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1, SH/AS1</b>

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4606:- Part 1: 1989	Storage water heaters General requirements <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3</i>	<b>G12/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1989	Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells <i>Amend: A</i>	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 3: 1992	Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells <i>Amend: A</i>	<b>G12/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 4607: 1989	Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve vented systems	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	NZS 4608: 1992	Control valves for hot water systems	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	NZS 4613: 1986	Domestic solar water heaters	<b>G12/AS1/AS2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4614: 1986	Installation of domestic solar water heating systems	<b>G12/AS2</b>
	NZS 4617: 1989	Tempering (3-port mixing) valves	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4671: 2001	Steel reinforcing materials	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4671: 2001	Steel Reinforcing Materials <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/AS1/AS3</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4680: 2006	Hot-dip galvanised (zinc) coating on fabricated ferrous articles	<b>B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 4692: Part 2: 2005	Electric water heaters Minimum Energy Performance Standards (MEPS) requirements and energy labelling	<b>G12/AS2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4740: 2000	Natural ventilaters – classification and performance	<b>G4/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 4765: 2007	Modified polyvinyl chloride (PVC-M) pipes for pressure applications	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	AS/NZS 4858: 2004	Wet area membranes	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 4859:- Part 1: 2002	Materials for the thermal insulation of buildings General criteria and technical provisions	<b>H1/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 4936: 2002	Air admittance valves for use in sanitary plumbing and drainage systems.	<b>G13/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	AS/NZS 5000.1 2005	Electric cables – Polymeric insulated – For working voltages up to and including 0.6/1 (1.2) kV <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 5000.2 2006	Electric cables – Polymeric insulated Part 2: For working voltages up to and including 450/750 v.	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 5065: 2005	Polyethylene and polypropylene pipe and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>E1/AS1, G13/AS2</b>

		<b>Where quoted</b>
	NZS/BS 5252: 1976 Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>F8/AS1</b>
	NZS 5261: 2003 Gas installation <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>C/AS1, G4/AS1, G10/VM1/AS1, G11/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 5262: 2003 Gas appliance safety <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	NZS 5807:- Code of practice for industrial identification by colour, wording or other coding Part 2: 1980 Identification of contents of piping, conduit and ducts <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>G10/AS1 G12/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 6214: 1988 Thermostats and thermal cutouts for domestic thermal storage electric water heaters (alternating current only)	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 6703: 1984 Code of practice for interior lighting design	<b>G7/AS1/VM1 G8/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 6742: 1971 Code of practice for emergency lighting in buildings	<b>F8/AS1, HB/SS 4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7601: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 3) for cold water services	<b>G12/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7602: 1977 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 5) for cold water services <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7610: 1991 Blue polyethylene pipes up to nominal size 63 for below ground use for potable water <i>Amend: 1, 2, A</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	NZS 7646: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipes and fittings for gas reticulation	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	SNZ HB 8630: 2009 Tracks and outdoor visitor structures	<b>B1/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 60335 Household and similar electrical Part 2.30: 2009 Safety appliance – Particular requirements for room heaters	<b>SH/AS1</b>

**Standards Australia**

**Where quoted**

	AS D26: 1972	Tube fittings with Dryseal American standard taper pipe and unified threads for automotive and industrial use	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	AS 1111:	ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws – Product grades A and B	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2000	Bolts	
	Part 2: 2000	Screws	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1167:-	Welding and brazing – Filler metals	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 1: 2005	Filler metal for brazing and braze welding	<b>G10/AS1</b>
	AS 1214: 1983	Hot-dip galvanised coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series)	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1229: 2002	Laundry troughs	<b>G2/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
	AS 1273: 1991	Unplasticized PVC (uPVC) downpipe and fittings for rainwater	<b>E1/AS1</b>
	AS 1308: 1987	Electric water heaters – Thermostats and thermal cut-outs <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	AS 1357:-	Water valves for use with unvented water heaters	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2009	Protection valves <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 2005	Control valves <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	AS 1366:-	Rigid cellular plastics sheets for thermal insulation	
	Part 1: 1992	Rigid cellular polyurethane (RC/PUR) <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>C/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 1992	Rigid cellular polyisocyanurate (RC/PIR)	<b>C/AS1</b>
	Part 3: 1992	Rigid cellular polystyrene – moulded (RC/PS-M) <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>C/AS1, E2/AS1</b>
	Part 4: 1989	Rigid cellular polystyrene – extruded (RC/PS-E)	<b>C/AS1, E2/AS1</b>
Amends 11 and 12	AS 1397: 2001	Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dip zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated	<b>B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	AS 1432: 2004	Copper tubes for plumbing, gasfitting and drainage applications	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

			Where quoted
	AS 1530:-	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 1994	Combustibility test for materials	<b>C/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 1993	Test for flammability of materials	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 4: 2005	Fire-resistance tests of elements of building construction	<b>C/AS1</b>
	AS 1566: 1997	Cooper and copper alloys – Rolled flat products	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1579: 2001	Arc welded steel pipes and fittings for water and waste water	<b>E1/AS1, G13/AS2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1589: 2001	Copper and copper alloy waste fittings	<b>G13/AS1</b>
	AS 1646: 2007	Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes	<b>E1/AS1</b>
	AS 1668:-	The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings	<b>G4/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 2: 2002	Ventilation design for indoor-air containment control <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	<b>G4/AS1</b>
	AS 1670:-	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems – System design, installation and commissioning	
	Part 6: 1997	Smoke alarms	<b>F7/AS1</b>
	AS 1691: 1985	Domestic oil-fired appliances – installation	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1741: 1991	Vitrified clay pipes and fittings with flexible joints – Sewerage quality	<b>E1/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1804: 1976	Soft lead sheet and strip	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	AS 1851: 2005	Maintenance of fire protection equipment	<b>HB/SS 1, SS 2, SS 5, SS 9, SS 13, SS 15</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1976: 1992	Vitreous china used in sanitary appliances	<b>G1/AS1</b>
	AS 2033: 2008	Installation of polyethylene pipe systems	<b>G14/VM1, E1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2049: 2002	Roof tiles	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	AS 2050: 2002	Installation of roof tiles	<b>E2/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 2159: 1995	Rules for the design and installation of piling (known as the SAA Piling Code) <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>B1/VM4</b>
	AS 2220:-	Emergency warning and intercommunication systems in buildings	
	Part 1: 1989	Equipment design and manufacture	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1989	System design, installation and commissioning	<b>C/AS1</b>

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2293:	Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings	
	Part 1: 2005	System design, installation and operation <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>F6/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	Part 2: 1995	Inspection and maintenance <i>Amend: 1,2</i>	<b>F6/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	Part 3: 2005	Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>F6/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	AS 2845:-	Water supply – Mechanical backflow prevention devices	
	Part 3: 1993	Field testing and maintenance <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>G12/AS1, HB/SS 7</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2870: 1996	Residential slabs and footings – Construction	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	AS 2887: 1993	Plastic waste fittings	<b>G13/AS1</b>
	AS 2890:-	Parking facilities	
	Part 1: 2004	Off-street parking <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>D1/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 2002	Off-street commercial facilities <i>Amend: 1</i>	<b>D1/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 3566	Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 2002	Corrosion resistance	
	AS 3571: 2009	Plastic piping systems – Glass reinforced thermoplastics (GRP) systems based on unsaturated polyester (UP) resin – pressure and non-pressure drainage and sewerage (ISO 10467: 2004 MOD)	<b>G13/AS2</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	AS 3588: 1996	Shower bases and shower modules	<b>G1/AS1</b>
	AS 3688: 2005	Water supply – Copper and copper alloy compression and capillary fittings and threaded end connectors <i>Amend: 1,2</i>	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amends 11 and 12	AS 3690: 2009	Installation of ABS pipe systems	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	AS 3706:-	Geotextiles – Methods of test	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2003	General requirements, sampling, conditioning, basic physical properties and statistical analysis	<b>E1/VM1</b>
	AS 3730	Guide to the properties of paints for buildings	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	Part 6: 1991	Solvent-borne – Exterior – Full gloss enamel	
	Part 7: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Flat	
	Part 8: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Low gloss	
	Part 9: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Semi-gloss	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 10: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Gloss	

			<b>Where quoted</b>
	AS 3730	Guide to the properties of paints for buildings	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	Part 6: 2006	Solvent-borne – Exterior – Full gloss enamel	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	Part 7: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Flat	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	Part 8: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Low gloss	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	Part 9: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Semi-gloss	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 10: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Gloss	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	AS 3786: 1993	Smoke alarms	<b>F7/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		<i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 4046	Methods of testing roof tiles	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 9: 2002	Determination of dynamic weather resistance	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	AS 4072:-	Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant separating elements	<b>C/AS1</b>
	Part 1: 2005	Service penetrations and control joints	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 4139: 2003	Fibre reinforced concrete pipes and fittings	<b>G13/AS2</b>
	AS 4178: 1994	Electromagnetic door holders	<b>HB/SS 3</b>
	AS 4276:-		
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 3.1: 2007	Water plate microbiology – Pour plate method using plate count agar	<b>HB/SS 9</b>
	AS 4290: 2000	Design and installation of revolving doors	<b>HB/SS 3</b>
		<i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
	AS 5007: 2007	Powered doors for pedestrian access and egress	<b>HB/SS 3</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 60188.4: 2007	Hearing aids – magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aid purposes	<b>HB/SS 12</b>



**British Standards Institution**

**Where quoted**

Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 10: 2009	Specification for flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 143, and BS 1256: 2000	Threaded pipe fittings in malleable cast iron and cast copper alloy <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	<b>G10/AS1, G14/VM1</b>
	BSDD 175: 1988	Code of practice for the identification of potentially contaminated land and its investigation	<b>F1/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 437: 2008	Specification for cast iron spigot and socket drain pipes and fittings <i>Amend: 5877</i>	<b>G13/AS2</b>
	BS 585:- Part 1: 1989	Wood stairs Specification for stairs with closed risers for domestic use, including straight and winder flights and quarter or half landings	<b>D1/AS1</b>
	BS EN 988: 1997	Zinc and zinc alloys. Specification for rolled flat products for building	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	BS EN 1044:1999	Brazing. Filler metals	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 1172: 1997	Copper and copper alloys – sheet and strip for building	<b>E1/AS1</b>
	BS EN 1490: 2000	Building valves. Combined temperature and pressure relief valves. Tests and requirements	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	BS EN 1491: 2000	Building valves. Expansion valves. Tests and requirements	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	BS EN 1567: 1999	Building valves. Water pressure reducing valves and combination water reducing valves. Requirements and tests.	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 1595: 1997	Pressure equipment made from borosilicate glass 3.3 – general rules for design, manufacture and testing	<b>G14/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011			

		<b>Where quoted</b>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 1759 Part 1: 2004	Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, class-designated. Steel flanges, NPS 1/2 to 24.	<b>E1/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 2971: 1991	Specification for Class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids	<b>G14/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 3402: 1969	Specification for quality of vitreous china sanitary appliances	<b>G1/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 3799: 1974 (1994)	Specification for steel pipe fittings, screwed and socket-welding for the petroleum industry	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 4790: 1996	Method for determination of the effects of a small source of ignition on textile floor coverings (hot metal nut method)	<b>C/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 4991: 1974 (1982)	Specification for propylene copolymer pressure pipe	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	BS 5287: 1996	Specification for assessment and labelling of textile floor coverings tested to BS 4790	<b>C/AS1</b>
	BS 5378:- Part 1: 1980	Safety signs and colours Specification for colour and design	<b>F8/AS1</b>
	BS 5395:- Part 2: 1984	Stairs, ladders and walkways Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs	<b>D1/AS1</b>
	BS 5446:-  Part 1: 1990	Components of automatic fire alarm systems for residential premises  Specification for self-contained smoke alarms and point-type smoke detectors <i>Amends: 6863, 7648, 9628</i>	<b>F7/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 6037:-  Part 1: 2003 Part 2: 2004	Code of practice for the Planning, design, installation and use of permanently installed access equipment Suspended access equipment Travelling ladders and gantries	<b>HB/SS 10</b> <b>HB/SS 10</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

		Where quoted
	BS 6374:- Lining of equipment with polymeric materials for the process industries	
	Part 1: 1985 Specification for lining with sheet thermoplastics	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	Part 2: 1984 Specification for lining with non-sheet applied thermoplastics	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	Part 3: 1984 Specification for lining with stoved thermosetting resins	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	Part 4: 1984 Specification for lining with cold curing thermosetting resins	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	Part 5: 1985 Specification for lining with rubbers	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	BS 6464: 1984 Specification for reinforced plastics pipes, fittings and joints for process plants	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	BS 6538: 1987 Air permeance of paper and board	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	Part 3: 1987 Method for determination of air permeance using the Garley apparatus	
	BS 6920:- Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of the water	
	Part 1: 2000 Specification	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	Part 2: 2000 Methods of tests	<b>G12/AS1</b>
	Part 3: 2000 High temperature tests	<b>G12/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	BS 7159: 1989 Code of practice for design and construction of glass-reinforced plastics (GRP) piping systems for individual plants or sites	<b>G14/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	BS 7777: 1993 Flat bottomed, vertical, cylindrical storage tanks for low temperature service	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	Part 1: Guide to the general provisions applying for design, construction and installation	
	Part 2: Specification for design and construction of single, double and full containment metal tanks for the storage of liquified gas at temperatures down to -165°C	
	Part 3: Recommendations for the design and construction of prestressed and reinforced concrete tanks and tank foundations and for the design and installation of tank insulation, tank lines and tank coating	
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	BS 8004: 1986 Code of practice for foundations	<b>B1/VM4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	BS EN 10241: 2000 Steel threaded pipe fittings	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	BS EN 10253-2: 2007 Butt-welding pipe fittings – non-alloy and ferric alloy steels with specific inspection requirements	<b>G10/AS1</b>

		<b>Where quoted</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 10253-3: 2008 Butt-welding pipe fittings – wrought austenitic and austenitic-ferritic (duplex) stainless steels without specific inspection requirements	<b>G10/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 12056-2: 2000 Gravity drainage systems inside buildings. Sanitary pipework, layout and calculation	<b>G13/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 12285: Workshop fabricated steel tanks	
	Part 1: 2003 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the underground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	Part 2: 2005 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the aboveground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	BS EN 12585: 1999 Glass plant, pipeline and fittings – Pipeline and fittings DN 15 to 1000 – compatibility and interchangeability	<b>G14/VM1</b>
	BS EN 13121-3: 2008 GRP tanks and vessels for use above ground. Design and workmanship <i>Amend: 1 (2010)</i>	<b>G14/VM1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 14324: 2004 Brazing. Guidance on the application of brazed joints	<b>G10/AS1</b>

### New Zealand Publications

#### Building Research Association of New Zealand

Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Bulletin 330: 1995 Thin flooring materials – 2. Preparation and laying. Appendix 1	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Bulletin 411: 2001 Recommended timber cladding profiles	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	BRANZ EM 4: 2005 Evaluation method for jointing systems for flush finished fibre cement sheet	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	BRANZ EM 5: 2005 Evaluation method for adhesives and seam tapes for butyl and EPDM rubber membranes	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BRANZ EM 6: 2011 Evaluation method for window and door support mechanisms or bars	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	BRANZ House Insulation Guide: 1995	<b>E3/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Paper C1: 1978 A construction guide to home insulation (second edition)	<b>E3/AS1</b>
	BRANZ Technical paper P21: 1991 A wall bracing test and evaluation procedure	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Supplement to P21 An evaluation method of P21 test results for use with NZS 3604: 1990	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	BRANZ Technical paper P36: 1983 Food processing floors, a guide to design, materials and construction. W.R. Sharman	<b>G3/AS1</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 Structural joints – strength and stiffness evaluation

**Where quoted****SH/AS1**ALF 3: The 'Annual Loss Factor' Method. A design tool for energy efficient houses, 3<sup>rd</sup> edition (April 2000)  
Albrecht Stoecklein and Mark Bassett**H1/Defs****Cement & Concrete Association of New Zealand**

CCANZ CP01: 2011 Code of Practice for weathertight concrete and concrete masonry construction

**E2/AS3****Master Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers NZ Inc and Water New Zealand**NZ Backflow testing standard 2011AS1 3.6.1 b), 3.7.2  
Field testing of backflow prevention devices and verification of air gaps**G12/AS1, HB/SS 7****New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc**

New Zealand Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice: 2008

**E2/AS1****The National Association of Steel Framed Housing Inc (NASH)**NASH Standard: Residential and Low Rise Steel Framing Part 1 2010  
Design Criteria**B1/AS1**Amend 12  
Oct 2011**Government Departments and Agencies**  
.....**Department of Labour**

Workplace exposure standards and biological indices for New Zealand: 1992

**F1/VM1, G4/VM1****Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries**

MQ 1: 1988 Qual approvals manual

**G3/AS1****Ministry of Economic Development**

NZECP 34: 2001 Electrical safety distances

**G9/VM1**

NZECP 36: 1993 Harmonic levels

**G9/VM1**

NZECP 51: 2004 Homeowner/occupier's electrical wiring work in domestic installations

**G9/AS1**

NZECP 54: 2001 Installation of recessed luminaires and auxiliary equipment

**C/AS1, G9/AS1****Ministry of Health**

Ministry of Health: 2005 Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand

**SH/AS1**

Ministry of Health: 2006 Household water supplies: the selection, operation and maintenance of individual household water supplies

**SH/AS1**Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**Ministry of Transport**

Power Lift Rules: 1989

Rules for power lifts not exceeding 750 watts (one horsepower): 1985

**Where quoted****D2/AS2, HB/SS 8****D2/AS2, HB/SS 8****SCION**Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Measurement of moisture content of wood

**E2/AS1****National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA)**

Temperature Normals for New Zealand 1961-1990

by A I Tomlinson and J Sansom (ISBN 0478083343)

Amend 11  
Sep 2010**H1/Defs**Amend 12  
Oct 2011**New Zealand Legislation**Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Chartered Professional Engineers of New Zealand Act 2002

**B1/VM1**

Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987

**F4/AS1**Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 2006

**C/AS1**

Gas Regulations 1993

**G12/AS1**

Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996

**F3/VM1**

Hazardous Substances (Classification) Regulations 2001

**F3/VM1**

Hazardous Substances (Classes 1 to 5 Controls) Regulations 2001

**F3/VM1**Hazardous Substances (Dangerous Goods and Scheduled  
Toxic Substances) Transfer Notice 2004**F3/VM1**Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Hazardous Substances (Disposal) Regulations 2001

**G14/VM1**

Hazardous Substances (Emergency Management) Regulations 2001

**F3/VM1**

Health &amp; Safety in Employment Act 1992

**HB/SS 9**Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 2006

**SH/AS1**

Resource Management Act 1991

**E1/VM1, G14/VM1**Resource Management (National Environment Standards relating  
to certain Pollutants, Dioxins and other Toxins)**SH/AS1**Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Regulations: 2004 (NESAQ)

**New Zealand Geomechanics Society**Guidelines for the field descriptions of soils and rocks in engineering  
use. Nov 1988**B1/VM1**Amend 12  
Oct 2011**Australian Publications****Building Control Commission, State of Victoria, Australia**

Smoke management in large spaces in buildings: 1998

Milke and Klote

**C/AS1**

**Australia/NZ Publications****Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council**

Guidelines for assessment and management of contaminated sites: 1992

**Where quoted****F1/VM1****British Publications****Building Research Establishment (UK)**

BRE Defect action sheet DAS 131: May 1989

External walls: Combustible external plastics insulation:  
Horizontal fire barriers

**C/AS1**

BRE Report 135: 1988

Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls in multi-storey buildings. Rogowski B.F., Ramaprasad R., Southern J.R.

**C/AS1**

BRE Report 186: 1990

Design principles for smoke ventilation in enclosed shopping centres. Morgan and Gardner

**C/AS1**

BRE Report 258: 1992

Design approaches for smoke control in atrium buildings. Hansell and Morgan

**C/AS1****Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers, London**

CIBSE Code Series A: 1996

Air distribution systems

**G4/VM1/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**International Publications****EIFS Industry Members Association**

EIMA 101.91: 1992 Standard Guide for resin of resin coated glass fibre mesh in exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), Class PB.

**E2/AS1****The European Committee for Standardisation**

EN 81:- Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts

Part 1: 1998 Electric lifts

Part 2: 1998 Hydraulic lifts

**D2/AS1, HB/SS 8****D2/AS1, HB/SS 8**

EN 115: 1983 Safety rules for the construction of escalators and passenger conveyors

**D2/AS3, HB/SS 8**

EN 12380: 1999 Air admittance valves for drainage systems – Requirements and test methods

**G13/AS1**

Eurocode DD ENV 1991-2-2: 1996

Eurocode 1: Basis of design actions on structures

Part 2.2: Actions on structures exposed to fire

**C/AS1**

**International Standards Organisation, Geneva**

ICBO Evaluation Services Inc AC148: Acceptance criteria for flashing materials

**Where quoted**

**E2/AS1**

ISO 140/VII: 1978 Field measurements of impact sound insulation of floors

**G6/VM1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

ISO 9223: 1992 Corrosion of metals and alloys; corrosivity of atmospheres; classification

**E2/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

ISO 11600: 2002 Building Construction – Jointing products Classification and requirements for sealants

**E2/AS1, SH/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

ISO/TS 15510: 2003 Stainless steels – chemical composition

**E2/AS1, SH/AS1**

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**World Health Organisation/Food and Agriculture Organisation**

Environmental Health Criteria 70

“Environment health criteria” for various chemicals

**F1/VM1**

Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants, Technical report series 776 Geneva: 1989

**F1/VM1**

IARC Monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans for individual chemicals, groups of chemicals, or processes. Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer

**F1/VM1**

Principles for the safety assessment of food additives and contaminants in food, Geneva: 1987

**F1/VM1**



**United States of America Publications**

---

**Where quoted**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**American National Standards Institute and**

**American Society of Mechanical Engineers**

ANSI/ASME B16.1: 1989 Cast iron pipe flanges and flanged fittings, Class 25, 125, 250 and 800

**G10/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

ANSI/ASME B16.3: 1985 Malleable-iron threaded fittings, Classes 150 and 300

**G10/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

ANSI/ASME B16.5: 1988 Pipe flanges and flanged fittings, steel-nickel alloy and other special alloys

**G10/AS1**

ANSI/ASME B16.9: 1990 Factory-made wrought steel butt-welding fittings

**G10/AS1**

ANSI B16.11: 1980 Forged steel fittings, socket-welding and threaded

**G10/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**American Petroleum Institute**

API SPEC 5L: 1991 Specification for line pipe

**G10/AS1**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

API STD 1104: 1988 Welding of pipelines and related facilities

**G10/AS1**

**American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)**

Design of smoke management systems. Klotz and Milke 1992

**C/AS1**

**American Society of Sanitary Engineers**

ASSE 1050: 1991 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing DWV systems stack type devices

**G13/AS1**

ASSE 1051: 1992 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing drainage systems

**G13/AS1**

**American Society for Testing and Materials**

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

ASTM A 53 – 90a Specification for pipe, steel, black and hot-dipped, zinc-coated welded and seamless

**G10/AS1**

ASTM A 106 – 91a Specification for seamless carbon steel pipe for high temperature service

**G10/AS1**

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

		<b>Where quoted</b>
	ASTM D 1143: 1981 Test method for piles under static axial compressive load	<b>B1/VM4</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amends 11 and 12	ASTM C 1549: 2009 Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	ASTM C 1549: 2009 Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM D 1667: 2005 Standard Test Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials – Vinyl Chloride Polymers and Copolymers (Closed-cell foam)	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	ASTM D 2240: 2005 Standard Test method for Rubber Property	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM D 6134: 1997 Standard Specification for Vulcanised Rubber Sheets Used in Waterproofing Systems	<b>SH/AS1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ASTM D 6134: 2007 Standard Specification for Vulcanised Rubber Sheets Used in Waterproofing Systems	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM E 96: 1992 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	ASTM E 96: 2005 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM E104: 2002 Standard Practice for Maintaining Constant Relative Humidity by Means of Aqueous Solutions	<b>E2/AS1</b>
	ASTM E 336: 1990 Method for measurement of airborne sound insulation in buildings	<b>G6/VM1</b>
	ASTM E 413: 1987 Classification for rating sound insulation	<b>G6/VM1</b>
	ASTM E 492: 1990 Test method for laboratory measurement of impact sound transmission through floor-ceiling assemblies using a tapping machine	<b>G6/VM1</b>
Amends 10 and 11	ASTM E 903: 1996 Standard Test Method for Solar Absorbance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres	<b>SH/AS1</b>
	ASTM E 989: 1989 Classification for determination of impact insulation class (IIC)	<b>G6/VM1</b>
	ASTM E 2098: 2000 Standard Test Method for Determining Tensile Breaking Strength of Glass Fibre Reinforcing Mesh for Use in Class PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS), after Exposure to a Sodium Hydroxide Solution	<b>E2/AS1</b>

		<b>Where quoted</b>
	ASTM E 2134: 2001 Standard Test Method for Evaluation the Tensile-Adhesion Performance of an Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM G 154: 2006 Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	<b>E2/AS1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM G 155: 2005 Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	<b>E2/AS1</b>
<b>International Conference of Building Officials, America</b>		
	Uniform Building Code Standard 4.1: 1997 Proscenium fire safety curtains	<b>C/AS1</b>
	Uniform Building Code Standard 26-2: 1997 Test method for the evaluation of thermal barriers	<b>C/AS1</b>
<b>National Fire Protection Association of America</b>		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NFPA 92B: 1995 Guide for smoke management systems in malls, atria and large areas	<b>C/AS1</b>
	NFPA 285: 1998 Standard method of test for the evaluation of flammability characteristics of exterior non load bearing wall assemblies containing components using the intermediate scale, multi-storey test apparatus	<b>C/AS1</b>
<b>United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)</b>		
	USEPA SW 846: 1986 Test methods for evaluating solid waste	<b>F1/VM1</b>
	EPA/540/1 – 89/002: 1989 Risk assessment guidance for Superfund, Vol 1. Human health evaluation manual (Part A) Interim final. Prepared by USEPA Office of Emergency and Remedial Response	<b>F1/VM1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Federal Specification Standard TT-S-00230C: Elastomeric type, cold applied single component for caulking, sealing, and glazing in buildings, building areas (plazas, decks, pavements, and other structures)	<b>E2/AS1, SH/AS1</b>
	Cross-connection Control Manual: 1989	<b>HB/SS 7</b>

**United States Public Health Service**

Toxicological profiles on individual chemicals. Prepared by the Agency for Toxicological Substances and Disease Registry, in collaboration with the US Environmental Protection Agency

**Miscellaneous Publication**

Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. The basic science of poisons. 4th ed. Macmillan. New York 1991. Klassen CD, Amdur MO, Doull J (Eds)

**Where quoted****F1/VM1****F1/VM1**

Definition	Source
<p>(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an allotment is taken—</p> <p>(a) to be a continuous area of land even if part of it is physically separated from any other part by a road or in any other manner, unless the division of the allotment into those parts has been allowed by a subdivision consent granted under the Resource Management Act 1991 or a subdivision approval under any former enactment relating to the subdivision of land:</p> <p>(b) to include the balance of any land from which any allotment is being or has been subdivided.”</p>	
<p><b>Alter</b> in relation to a <i>building</i>, includes to rebuild, re-erect, repair, enlarge and extend the <i>building</i>.</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Alternative solution</b> means a solution that is compliant with the <i>Building Code</i> but is not part of the <i>Compliance Document</i>.</p>	<b>HB</b>
<p><b>Aluminium flashings</b> Aluminium <i>flashings</i> shall be a minimum thickness of 0.7 mm, and formed from 5000 series in accordance with AS/NZS 1734 and, where pre-painted, have a factory-applied finish complying with AS/NZS 2728.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings</b> Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings shall be:</p> <p>(a) <i>BMT</i> 0.55 mm minimum of steel for <i>flashings</i> generally</p> <p>(b) <i>BMT</i> 0.4 mm of steel for roll-formed roll-top ridge <i>flashings</i></p> <p>(c) in aluminium-zinc coating of AZ150 to AS 1397, with a factory-applied finish in accordance with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in sea spray zone and corrosion zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Amenity</b> means an attribute of a <i>building</i> which contributes to the health, physical independence, and well being of the <i>building's</i> users but which is not associated with disease or a specific illness.</p>	<b>Code</b>
<p><b>Anti-ponding board</b> A board laid under the lowest row of concrete and clay roof tiles and supports the <i>roof underlay</i>. The board is sloped to ensure moisture under the tiles is directed to the exterior of the roof.</p>	<b>CD-E2</b>
<p><b>Appliance hearth</b> A layer of <i>non-combustible</i> material under or near an appliance. It may be either part of the <i>building</i> structure or an overlay on a <i>combustible</i> floor.</p>	<b>CD-C</b>
<p><b>Approved temperature data</b> means the temperature data contained in A I Tomlinson and J Sansom, <i>Temperature Normals for New Zealand for period 1961 to 1990</i> (NIWA, ISBN 0478083343).</p>	<b>Code</b> <b>CD-H1</b>
<p><b>Appurtenant structure</b>, in relation to a <i>dam</i>, means a structure that is integral to the proper functioning of the <i>dam</i>.</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Apron flashing</b> A near flat or sloping <i>flashing</i> with a vertical upstand, used at junctions between roofs and walls.</p>	<b>CD-E2</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010

<b>Definition</b>	<b>Source</b>
-------------------	---------------

---

**Asbestos** as defined by the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1983 means:

- (a) Actinolite, amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or tremolite; or
- (b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph a) of this definition; or
- (c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of any such mineral; or
- (d) A material or article that is contaminated by any such material.

**COMMENT:**  
 Asbestos now has the meaning given to it by Regulation 2 of the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1998. This meaning is:

- (a) Amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous actinolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or fibrous tremolite; or
- (b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or
- (c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or
- (d) A material or article that is contaminated by a mineral specified in paragraph (a):

**Atmospheric burner** A burner system where all the air for combustion is induced by the inspirating effect of a gas injector and/or by natural draught in the combustion chamber without mechanical assistance. **CD-G4**

**Attached garage** A garage that shares a common *wall* or *walls* with a habitable *building*, and is enclosed by *roof* and *wall claddings* that are continuous with the habitable part of the *building*. **CD-E2**

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**Authority** means the Building Industry Authority that was established under the Building Act 1991. **HB**

**COMMENT:**  
 The Authority was dissolved under the *Building Act 2004* and its functions and powers transferred to the Department of Building and Housing.

**B**

**Backcountry hut** means a building that— **Code**

- (a) is located on land that is administered by the Department of Conservation for conservation, recreational, scientific, or other related purposes, including any land administered under any of the following:
  - (i) the Conservation Act 1987;
  - (ii) the National Parks Act 1980;
  - (iii) the Reserves Act 1977; and
- (b) is intended to provide overnight shelter to any person who may visit and who carries his or her own food, bedding, clothing, and outdoor equipment; and
- (c) contains only basic facilities, which may include (but are not limited to) any or all of the following:
  - (i) sleeping platforms or bunks;
  - (ii) mattresses;
  - (iii) food preparation surfaces;

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>(iv) appliances for heating;</p> <p>(v) appliances for cooking;</p> <p>(vi) toilets; and</p> <p>(d) has been certified by the Director-General as being in a location that wheelchair users are unlikely to be able to visit; and</p> <p>(e) is intended to be able to sleep—</p> <p>(i) no more than 20 people in its <i>backcountry hut sleeping area</i>; and</p> <p>(ii) no more than 40 people in total; and</p> <p>(f) does not contain any connection, except by <i>radiocommunications</i>, to a <i>network utility operator</i>]</p>	
<p><b>Backcountry hut sleeping area</b> means the area of a backcountry hut that contains sleeping platforms, bunks, or beds that are—</p> <p>(a) within the same room as a food preparation or eating area; or</p> <p>(b) in a fully enclosed room that is separate from any food preparation or eating area and has—</p> <p>(i) internal walls that limit the spread of fire; and</p> <p>(ii) the means of direct egress to outside the hut.</p>	<b>Code</b>
<p><b>Backflow</b> A flowing back or reversal of the normal direction of the flow caused by <i>back-pressure</i> and includes <i>back-siphonage</i>.</p>	<b>CD-C</b>
<p><b>Backflow prevention device</b> A device that prevents <i>backflow</i>.</p>	<b>CD-C, CD-G12</b>
<p><b>Backing rod</b> Closed cell polyethylene foam (PEF) rod inserted into gap to provide backing support for foam <i>air seal</i> or <i>sealant</i>.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Back-pressure</b> A <i>backflow</i> condition caused by the downstream pressure becoming greater than the supply pressure.</p>	<b>CD-G12</b>
<p><b>Back-siphonage</b> <i>Backflow</i> condition caused by the supply pressure becoming less than the downstream pressure.</p>	<b>CD-G12</b>
<p><b>Baluster</b> A post providing the support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</p>	<b>CD-B1, CD-B2</b>
<p><b>Baluster</b> An infill member that provides support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Balustrade</b> The infill parts of a barrier (typically between floor and top rail).</p>	<b>CD-B2, CD-F4</b>
<p><b>Basement</b> Any <i>firecell</i> or part of a <i>firecell</i> below the level of the lowest <i>final exit</i>.</p>	<b>CD-C</b>
<p><b>COMMENT:</b></p> <p>Because <i>fire safety precautions</i> are increased with increases in <i>escape height</i>, the precautions for <i>basements</i> increase with <i>basement</i> depth. Thus a single floor <i>building</i> with one <i>basement</i> level is treated as a two floor <i>building</i>, a single floor <i>building</i> with three <i>basement</i> levels as a four floor <i>building</i> and the requirements of C/AS1 Table 4.1 shall be applied downwards as opposed to upwards for levels above ground.</p>	
<p><b>Base metal thickness (BMT)</b> The thickness of the bare or base metal before any subsequent coating, such as galvanizing.</p>	<b>CD-E2</b>
<p><b>Batten</b> See <b>ceiling batten, tile batten</b>.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>

Definition	Source
<p><b>Bird's beak</b> A double fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <i>flashing</i> to stiffen the edge and to assist in deflecting moisture away from the <i>cladding system</i> below. Refer also <i>Kick-out</i> and <i>Drip edge</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>COMMENT:</b> A <i>bird's beak</i> is used at the bottom of a <i>capping</i> to deflect water away from the <i>enclosed balustrade cladding</i>.</p>	
<p><b>Blocking</b> Solid timber having the same depth as the joists and set at right angles between the joists to stiffen and prevent them from buckling.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bond, running</b> or <b>stretcher</b> The <i>bond</i> when the units of each course overlap the units in the preceding course by between 25% and 75% of the length of the units.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bottom plate</b> A plate placed under the bottom end of <i>studs</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Boundary</b> means any <i>boundary</i> which is shown on a survey plan approved by the Chief Surveyor and which is deposited in the Titles Office whether or not a new title has been issued.</p>	CD-C
<p><b>Boundary joist</b> A joist running along the outer ends of the floor joists.</p>	CD-B1
<p><b>Bracing</b> Any method employed to provide lateral support to a <i>building</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bracing capacity</b> Strength of <i>bracing</i> of a whole <i>building</i> or of elements within a <i>building</i>. <i>Bracing capacity</i> is measured in <i>bracing units</i> (BUs).</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bracing demand</b> The horizontal forces to be resisted by a whole <i>building</i> or by an element within a <i>building</i>. These horizontal forces are a result of wind or earthquake action. <i>Bracing demand</i> forces are measured in <i>bracing units</i> (BUs).</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bracing line</b> A line along or across a <i>building</i> containing <i>wall bracing elements</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bracing rating</b> The lateral load resistance assigned, for example, to a <i>wall bracing system</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Bracing unit (BU)</b> A <i>bracing unit</i> is a measure of:</p> <p>(a) the horizontal force (<i>bracing demand</i>) on the <i>building</i> (1 kiloNewton is equal to 20 bracing units)</p> <p>(b) the resistance to horizontal force (<i>bracing capacity</i>) of <i>building elements</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Branch discharge pipe</b> A <i>discharge pipe</i> that serves one or more <i>fixture discharge pipes</i> for any one floor.</p>	CD-G13
<p><b>Branch vent pipe</b> A <i>vent pipe</i> that serves two or more <i>fixture vent pipes</i>.</p>	CD-G13
<p><b>Building</b> has the meaning given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Section 8 states:

**"8 Building: what it means and includes:**

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, building—
- (a) means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable structure (including a structure intended for occupation by people, animals, machinery, or chattels); and



Definition	Source
<p><b>Building height</b> The vertical distance between the floor level of the lowest <i>final exit</i> from the <i>building</i>; and the highest occupied floor level containing or supporting any <i>purpose group</i> other than IE, IA or ID, or penthouses used to enclose <i>stairways</i>, liftshafts or machinery rooms located on or within the roof.</p>	<b>Code</b>
<p><b>Building levy</b> means a levy payable under section 53 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Building method or product</b> has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>. Section 20(2)(c) states:</p> <p>“(c) building methods, methods of construction, building design, or building materials (building methods or products) that have a current product certificate issued under section 269.”</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Building performance index (BPI)</b> in relation to a <i>building</i>, means the <i>heating energy</i> of the <i>building</i> divided by the product of the <i>heating degrees total</i> and the sum of the <i>floor area</i> and the <i>total wall area</i>, and so is calculated in accordance with the following formula:</p> $\text{BPI} = \frac{\text{heating energy}}{\text{heating degrees total} \times (\text{floor area} + \text{total wall area})}$	<b>Code</b>
<p><b>Building work—</b></p> <p>(a) means work—</p> <p>(i) for, or in connection with, the <i>construction</i>, <i>alteration</i>, demolition, or removal of a <i>building</i>; and</p> <p>(ii) on an <i>allotment</i> that is likely to affect the extent to which an existing <i>building</i> on that <i>allotment</i> complies with the <i>Building Code</i>; and</p> <p>(b) includes <i>sitework</i>; and</p> <p>(c) includes design work (relating to <i>building work</i>) that is design work of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be restricted <i>building work</i> for the purposes of this Act; and</p> <p>(d) in Part 4, and the definition in this section of “supervise”, also includes design work (relating to building work) of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be <i>building work</i> for the purposes of Part 4]</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Building warrant of fitness (BWofF)</b> means the warrant of fitness an <i>owner</i> of a <i>building</i> must supply to a <i>territorial authority</i> under section 108 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	<b>HB</b>
<p><b>Building wrap</b> or <b>building underlay</b> See <b>wall underlay</b>.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 12  
Oct 2011Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p><b>Butt flashing</b> A preformed wall <i>flashing</i>, used to flash windows and corners on horizontal profiled metal wall <i>cladding</i>. A <i>butt flashing</i> is shaped to underflash the <i>cladding</i>, with the <i>cladding</i> butting against the exposed box portion of the <i>flashing</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>Butyl rubber</b> and <b>EPDM flashings</b> <i>Butyl rubber</i> and <i>EPDM flashings</i> shall be a minimum thickness of 1.0 mm, and shall comply with the following parts of Table 1 in ASTM D6134:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(b) tensile strength</li> <li>(c) elongation</li> <li>(d) water absorption</li> <li>(e) water vapour transmission</li> <li>(f) heat aging followed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i) tensile strength</li> <li>ii) elongation.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	Simple House
<b>C</b>	
<p><b>Cable car—</b></p> <p>(a) means a vehicle—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) that carries people or goods on or along an inclined plane or a suspended cable; and</li> <li>(ii) that operates wholly or partly outside of a <i>building</i>;</li> </ul> <p>And</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(iii) the traction for which is supplied by a cable or any other means; but</li> </ul> <p>(b) does not include a lift that carries people or goods between the floors of a <i>building</i>.</p>	BA04
<p><b>Cantilevered deck</b> A <i>deck</i> where no support is provided at the outer extremities of the <i>deck</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>COMMENT:</b> <i>Cantilevered decks</i> are often constructed by extending <i>framing</i> members through the <i>cladding</i> beyond the <i>building</i> face. <i>Cantilevered decks</i> are sometimes known as balconies.</p>	
<p><b>Canterbury earthquake region</b> is the area contained within the boundaries of the Christchurch City Council, the Selwyn District Council and the Waimakariri District Council.</p>	CD-B1
<p><b>Capacity</b> The load resistance of a connector or fixing.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Capping</b> A <i>flashing</i> formed to cover the top of an <i>enclosed balustrade</i> or <i>parapet</i>. Also known as a coping.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>Cavity barrier</b> A <i>construction</i> provided to close openings within a <i>concealed space</i> against the passage of <i>fire</i>, or to restrict the spread of <i>fire</i> within such spaces.</p>	CD-C
<p><b>Cavity batten</b> A vertical packing member used to create a <i>drained cavity</i> as part of a <i>cladding system</i>.</p>	CD-E2

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 12  
Oct 2011Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p><b>Cavity spacer</b> A short block used to provide intermittent support for fixings or pipe penetrations through a <i>drained cavity</i>, while not interrupting drainage within the cavity.</p> <p>A <i>cavity spacer</i> is required to be set to a slight fall (5° minimum from horizontal) to allow drainage of any moisture from the top.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>Cavity wall</b> A term used to describe a wall that incorporates a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>Ceiling batten</b> A horizontal member fixed below <i>rafters</i>, or truss bottom chords to which the ceiling <i>lining</i> is attached.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Certificate of acceptance</b> means a certificate issued under section 96 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p><b>Certificate for public use</b> means a certificate issued under section 363A of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	HB
<p><b>Change the use</b> for the purposes of sections 114 and 115 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>, change the use, in relation to a <i>building</i>, means to change the use (determined in accordance with regulation 6) of all or a part of the <i>building</i> from one use (the old use) to another (the new use) and with the result that the requirements for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> in relation to the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> in relation to the old use.</p>	BR2
<p><b>Check valve (or non-return valve)</b> A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a <i>backflow prevention device</i>.</p>	CD-G12
<p><b>Chimney</b> A <i>non-combustible</i> structure which encloses one or more <i>flues</i>, <i>fireplaces</i> or other heating appliances.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C, CD-G4
<p><b>Chimney back</b> The <i>non-combustible</i> wall forming the back of a <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p><b>Chimney base</b> That part of a <i>chimney</i> which houses the <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	CD-B1
<p><b>Chimney breast</b> The front <i>fireplace</i> wall construction above the <i>fireplace</i> opening.</p>	CD-C
<p><b>Chimney jambs</b> The side walls of a <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p><b>Cladding</b> The exterior weather-resistant surface of a <i>building</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>COMMENT:</b> Includes any supporting substrate and, if applicable, surface treatment.</p>	
<p><b>Cladding system</b> The outside or exterior weather-resistant surface of a <i>building</i>; including <i>roof cladding</i> and <i>roof underlays</i>, wall <i>cladding</i> and <i>wall underlays</i>, and cavity components, rooflights, windows, doors and all penetrations, <i>flashings</i>, seals, joints and junctions.</p> <p>Where required by this Acceptable Solution, the <i>cladding system</i> shall include a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p><b>Cladding system</b> The weatherproof wall or <i>roof</i> enclosure of a <i>building</i>, including underlays, <i>claddings</i> and their fixings, windows, doors and all penetrations, <i>flashings</i>, seals, joints and junctions.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Classified use</b> means a <i>classified use</i> listed in clause A1 of the <i>Building Code</i>.</p>	BR1
<p><b>Cleaning eye</b> A small <i>diameter access point</i> usually formed as part of a fitting or trap.</p>	CD-G13

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 12  
Oct 2011Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p><b>Cleared ground level (CGL)</b> The <i>ground level</i> after completion of site excavation and removal of all harmful material, but before excavation for <i>foundations</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p><b>Code compliance certificate</b> means a certificate issued by a <i>building consent authority</i> under section 95 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p><b>Combined waste pipe</b> A <i>discharge pipe</i> which serves two or more <i>waste pipes</i>.</p>	CD-G13
<p><b>Combustible</b> See <i>non-combustible</i>.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p><b>Combustion appliance</b> A slow combustion stove, a free standing metal cone fireplace, a cast iron pot belly stove, an oil burning space heater, or a vented gas burning heater.</p>	Code
<p><b>Common extract duct</b> A mechanical ventilation duct that extracts from different household units, and may contain air, moisture and contaminant.</p>	CD-G4
<p><b>Common ramp</b> A ramp which is used, or intended to be used by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a <i>service ramp</i> or <i>accessible ramp</i>.</p>	CD-D1
<p><b>Common stairway</b> A <i>stairway</i> which is used, or intended to be used, by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a <i>private stairway</i>, <i>service stairway</i> or <i>accessible stairway</i>.</p>	CD-D1
<p><b>Compliance document</b> has the meaning given to it by section 22 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p> <p>Section 22 states:</p> <p>“22. Compliance document for use in establishing compliance with Building Code —</p> <p>(1) The chief executive may, by notice in the Gazette, issue a document for use in establishing compliance with the Building Code (a Compliance Document).</p> <p>(2) A person who complies with a Compliance Document must, for the purposes of this Act, be treated as having complied with the provisions of the Building Code to which the document relates.</p> <p>(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any regulations referred to in section 20”.</p>	BA04
<p><b>Compliance schedule</b> means a <i>compliance schedule</i> required under section 100 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p><b>Compliance schedule statement</b> means a statement issued by a <i>territorial or regional authority</i> referred to in section 105(e) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	HB
<p><b>Concealed space</b> Any part of the space within a <i>building</i> that cannot be seen from an <i>occupied space</i>.</p>	Code
<p><b>COMMENT:</b></p> <p>This term includes any ceiling space, roof space, space under a raised floor (such as computer rooms, floors, or stages), plenums, spaces under a tiered floor, “left-over spaces” created when some structural element or the like has been covered in; small service or duct spaces within the volume of a <i>firecell</i> and the like, but not a <i>protected shaft</i>.</p>	
<p><b>Concrete slab shrinkage control joint</b> A line along which the horizontal strength of the slab is deliberately reduced so that any shrinkage in the slab will result in a crack forming along that line.</p>	Simple House

	<b>Definition</b>	<b>Source</b>
	<b>Department</b> means the Department of Building and Housing.	<b>HB</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Department of Conservation</b> means the department of State established by section 5 of the Conservation Act 1987.	<b>Code</b>
	<b>Determination</b> means a determination made by the Chief Executive under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	<b>BA04</b>
	<b>Developed length</b> The total length along the centre line of a pipe including fittings and bends.	<b>CD-G13</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Diagonal brace</b> A member of a framed <i>building</i> fixed diagonally and used to resist tension or compression or both.	<b>Simple House</b>
	<b>Diameter (or bore)</b> The nominal internal <i>diameter</i> .	<b>CD-G12, CD-G13</b>
	<b>Direct fixed</b> A term used to describe a wall <i>cladding</i> attached directly to the wall <i>framing</i> , without the use of a <i>drained cavity</i> .	<b>CD-E2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Director-General</b> has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987.	<b>Code</b>
	<b>Discharge pipe</b> Any pipe that is intended to convey discharge from <i>sanitary fixtures</i> or <i>sanitary appliances</i> .	<b>CD-G13</b>
	<b>Discharge stack</b> A <i>discharge pipe</i> that has one or more <i>discharge pipe</i> connections, and which is vented at one end via a <i>discharge stack vent</i> .	<b>CD-G13</b>
	<b>Discharge stack vent</b> A <i>vent pipe</i> connected to the top of the <i>discharge stack</i> .	<b>CD-G13</b>
	<b>Discharge unit</b> The unit of measure for the discharge (hydraulic load) in the <i>plumbing system</i> , and is based on the rate, duration and frequency of discharge from a <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> .	<b>CD-G13</b>
	<b>Doorset</b> A complete assembly comprising a door leaf or leaves including any glazed or solid panels adjacent to or over the leaves within the door frame including hardware or other inbuilt features; and a door frame, if any, with its fixings to the wall and, for a sliding or tilting door, all guides and their respective fixings to the lintel, wall or sill.	<b>CD-C, CD-F8</b>
	<b>Dormer or dormer window</b> A framed structure that projects from a sloping roof, and has a window at its outer end.	<b>CD-E2</b>
	<b>Drain</b> A pipe normally laid below ground level including fittings and equipment and intended to convey <i>foul water</i> or <i>surface water</i> to an <i>outfall</i> .	<b>Code</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	<b>Drained cavity</b> A cavity space, immediately behind a wall <i>cladding</i> , that has vents at the base of the wall. Also known as a drained and vented cavity and referred to in E2/AS1 as a cavity or <i>drained cavity</i> .	<b>CD-E2</b>
	<i>A drained cavity</i> assists drying by allowing water which occasionally penetrates the wall <i>cladding system</i> to drain to the exterior of the <i>building</i> , and any remaining moisture to dry by evaporation. Where E2/AS1 requires a nominal 20 mm <i>drained cavity</i> , the depth shall be between limits of 18 mm and 25 mm. For definition of masonry veneer cavity refer to SNZ HB 4236.	
	<b>Drain vent pipe</b> Any pipe which is intended to permit the movement of air into and out of the <i>drain</i> and <i>sewer</i> .	<b>CD-G13</b>

Definition	Source
<b>Draught diverter</b> A device, without moving parts, fitted in the <i>flue</i> of an appliance for isolating the combustion system from the effects of pressure changes in the secondary <i>flue</i> .	CD-G4, CD-C
<b>Drip edge</b> Fold(s) applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <i>flashing</i> to deflect moisture away from the <i>cladding system</i> below. Refer also <i>Bird's beak</i> and <i>Kick-out</i> .	CD-E2
<b>Durable</b> Resistant to wear and decay.	CD-B2
Amend 12 Oct 2011   <b>Dwang</b> A short (usually horizontal) member fixed between vertical <i>framing</i> timbers. Also known as noggling.	CD-E2
<b>E</b>	
<b>Early childhood centre</b> A facility used for the education or care of children under the age of six, and required to be licensed under the Education (Early Childhood Centres) Regulations 1998.	CD-C
Amend 12 Oct 2011   <b>Eaves</b> That part of the roof <i>construction</i> , including <i>cladding</i> , fascia and eaves gutter (spouting), that extends beyond the exterior face of the wall.	CD-E2
<b>Eaves bearer</b> or <b>soffit bearer</b> or <b>sprocket</b> A horizontal member attached to the end of a truss or a <i>rafter</i> and to a <i>stud</i> , or a ribbon board, or a soffit plate, and to which the <i>eaves lining</i> is attached.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010   <b>EPDM</b> Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer – a thermosetting synthetic rubber. See <b>butyl rubber</b> .	Simple House
<b>EIFS (Exterior Insulation and Finish System)</b> A polystyrene sheet-based <i>cladding system</i> that uses mesh reinforced polymer-modified cement-based or polymer-based plaster base coats and a protective top coating.	CD-E2
<b>Electrical fixed appliance</b> An electrical appliance which is fixed-wired to the <i>electrical installation</i> , or intended to remain permanently attached and form part of the <i>building</i> .	Code
<b>Electrical installation</b> Any <i>electrical fixed appliances</i> and components used in the reticulation of electricity, which are intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of the <i>building</i> .	Code
<b>Electrical supply system</b> The source of electricity external to the <i>electrical installation</i> .	Code
<b>Electrolytic corrosion</b> Galvanic corrosion commonly resulting from the contact of two dissimilar metals when an electrolyte such as water is present.	CD-E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011   <b>Enclosed balustrade</b> A timber-framed barrier with <i>cladding</i> across all exposed faces. Refer also Parapet.	CD-E2
<b>Enclosed deck</b> A <i>deck</i> , whether over an interior or exterior space, that has an impermeable upper surface and is closed on the underside. May also be known as a balcony.	CD-E2
<b>Energy work</b> means—	BA04
(a) gasfitting; or	
(b) prescribed electrical work	

Definition	Source
<b>Energy work certificate</b> means a certificate of the kind referred to in section 19(1)(e) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
<b>Envelope complexity</b> The categorisation of the complexity of the total <i>building</i> envelope into one of four classes, depending on the particular features of the <i>building</i> as specified in E2/AS1.	CD-E2
<b>EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer)</b> A thermosetting synthetic rubber used as a resilient part of a sealing washer, or as a roof <i>membrane</i> .	CD-E2
<b>Equivalent aerodynamic area</b> The area of an equivalent aerodynamically perfect orifice, and equals the penetration area required by the natural ventilation device multiplied by the discharge coefficient determined under test.	CD-G4
<b>Escape height</b> The height between the floor level in the <i>firecell</i> being considered and the floor level of the required <i>final exit</i> which is the greatest vertical distance above or below that <i>firecell</i> .	CD-C, CD-F3 CD-F6
<b>COMMENT:</b>	
1. It is necessary only to use the greatest height to the exits required for the <i>firecell</i> being considered, even though the <i>building</i> may have other <i>final exits</i> at lower or higher levels.	
2. Where the <i>firecell</i> contains <i>intermediate floors</i> , or upper floors within <i>household units</i> the <i>escape height</i> shall be measured from the floor having the greatest vertical separation from the <i>final exit</i> .	
<b>Escape route</b> A continuous unobstructed route from any <i>occupied space</i> in a <i>building</i> to a <i>final exit</i> to enable occupants to reach a <i>safe place</i> , and shall comprise one or more of the following: <i>open paths</i> , <i>protected paths</i> and <i>safe paths</i> .	Code
<b>COMMENT:</b>	
Doors are not obstructions in an <i>escape route</i> provided they comply with C/AS1 Part 3 and D1/AS1.	
<b>Essential service</b> In the context of an <i>electrical installation</i> means emergency lighting, firemen's lifts, alarms, water pumps, sprinklers, detectors, ventilation systems and public address systems necessary for the safety of people in <i>buildings</i> .	Code
<b>Estimated value</b> in relation to <i>building work</i> , means the estimated aggregate of the values, determined in accordance with section 10 of the Goods and Services Tax Act 1985, of all goods and services to be supplied for the <i>building work</i> .	BA04
<b>Evacuation time</b> The time taken by the occupants of the <i>building</i> to evacuate the <i>building</i> to a <i>final exit</i> .	Code
<b>Exitway</b> All parts of an <i>escape route</i> protected by <i>fire</i> or <i>smoke separations</i> , or by distance when exposed to open air, and terminating at a <i>final exit</i> .	Code
<b>Expansion joint</b> A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also <i>Control joint</i> .	CD-E2

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**Definition****Source**

**External wall** Any exterior face of a *building* within 30° of vertical, consisting of *primary* and/or *secondary elements* intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment, but which may also contain *unprotected areas*.

**Code****COMMENT:**

A roof is an *external wall* if within 30° of the vertical.

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**External wall** An outer wall of a *building*.

**Simple House**Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**External wall** Any vertical exterior face of a *building* consisting of *primary* and/or *secondary elements* intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment.

**CD-E2****F**

**Factor of safety** in relation to any *building* means the ratio of resisting forces to applied forces for a given loading condition. It is generally expressed to two significant figures.

**CD-B1**

**Falsework**, in relation to *building work* or the maintenance of a *building*,—`

**BA04**

(a) means any temporary structure or framework used to support materials, equipment, or an assembly; and

(b) includes steel tubes, adjustable steel props, proprietary frames, or other means used to support a permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting; but

(c) does not include scaffolding or cranes used for support.

**Final exit** The point at which an *escape route* terminates by giving direct access to a *safe place*.

**Code****COMMENT:**

*Final exits* are commonly the external doors from a ground floor, but this applies only if such doors open directly onto a *safe place*. If a *safe place* can be reached only by passing down an alley, or across a bridge, then the *final exit* is not reached until the end of such an alley or bridge. *Final exits*, therefore, should be seen strictly as a point of arrival, rather than as any particular element of a *building*. They are determined entirely by the definition of *safe place*.

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**Finished ground level (FGL)** The level of the ground against any part of a *building* after all backfilling and/or landscaping and/or surface paving has been completed.

**CD-E2**

**Fire** The state of combustion during which flammable materials burn producing heat, toxic gases, or smoke or flame or any combination of these.

**Code**

**Firecell** Any space including a group of contiguous spaces on the same or different levels within a *building*, which is enclosed by any combination of *fire separations*, *external walls*, roofs, and floors.

**Code****COMMENT:**

Floors, in this context, includes ground floors and those in which the underside is exposed to the external environment (eg, when cantilevered). Note also that internal floors between *firecells* are *fire separations*.

**Firecell rating (F)** The *fire resistance rating (FRR)* intended to prevent *fire* spread to another *firecell*, for sufficient time to provide for safe evacuation of occupants and protection of adjacent *housing units* and sleeping areas in the *building* of *fire* origin and fire fighters engaged in fire fighting and rescue operations.

**CD-C**



Definition	Source
<b>Forced or induced draught appliance</b> An appliance where all or part of the air for combustion is provided by a fan or other mechanical device which is an integral part of the combustion system.	<b>CD-G4</b>
<b>Former Act</b> means the Building Act 1991.	<b>BA04</b>
<b>Foul water</b> The discharge from any <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> .	<b>Code</b>
<b>Foul water drainage system</b> <i>Drains</i> , joints and fittings normally laid underground and used specifically for the conveyance of water from the <i>plumbing system</i> to an <i>outfall</i> .	<b>Code</b>
<b>Foundation</b> Those parts of a <i>building</i> transmitting and distributing loads to the ground through a <i>footing</i> .	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Framing</b> Timber members to which <i>lining</i> , <i>cladding</i> , flooring, or decking is attached; or which are depended upon for supporting the structure, or for resisting forces applied to it.	<b>CD-E2</b>
<b>Free outlet (push through)</b> In the context of <i>storage water heaters</i> means a <i>water heater</i> with a tap on the cold water inlet so designed that the hot water is discharged through an open outlet.	<b>CD-G12</b>
<b>Functional requirements</b> in relation to a <i>building</i> , means those functions which a <i>building</i> is to perform for the purposes of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	<b>BA04</b>
<b>G</b>	
<b>Gable</b> Triangular part of an <i>external wall</i> between the planes of the <i>roof</i> and the line of the <i>eaves</i> .	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Galvanised steel flashings</b> Galvanised steel <i>flashings</i> shall be:	<b>Simple House</b>
(a) <i>BMT</i> of 0.55 mm minimum for <i>flashings</i> generally	
(b) <i>BMT</i> of 0.4 mm minimum for roll-formed roll-top ridge <i>flashings</i>	
(c) Hot-dipped zinc coated Z275 with a factory-applied finish that complies with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in Sea Spray and corrosion Zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.	
<b>Gantry</b> A structure covering a public way providing protection from both the side and overhead.	<b>CD-F5</b>
<b>Gasfitting</b> has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976.	<b>BA04/PGDA</b>
Section 2 states:	
“(a) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) beyond the outlet of any gas measurement system supplying a consumer or gas refueller with gas (or, where there is no such gas measurement system, beyond the custody transfer point of the place at which gas is supplied to a consumer or gas refueller):	
(b) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) that convey gas from any gas storage container in the possession or control of a consumer or gas refueller, and—	

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010

## Definition

## Source

- (i) In the case of liquefied petroleum gas, that are downstream of the first regulator beyond that container; or
- (ii) In the case of any other gas or where there is no such regulator (in the case of liquefied petroleum gas), that are downstream of the outlet valve of the container:
- (c) The work of fixing or unfixing the whole or part of the control system of any gas appliance—  
but does not include—
- (d) Work on any gas storage container, including its fixing or unfixing; or
- (e) Work on any gas transmission system or distribution system; or
- (f) Work on any pipes or fittings supplied with liquefied petroleum gas from any gas storage container or containers that contains, or together contain, less than 15 kilograms net weight of liquefied petroleum gas; or
- (g) Work in any circumstances where the exclusions in section 3(2) of the Gas Act 1992 apply:]”

**Gather** That part of a *chimney* where the transition from *fireplace* to stack occurs.

CD-B1

**Good ground** means any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e. an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a *factor of safety* of 3.0), but excludes:

CD-B1

- (a) Potentially compressible ground such as topsoil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids,
- (b) Expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested, from the liquid limit, in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and
- (c) Any ground which could foreseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, (liquefaction, lateral spread – for the *Canterbury earthquake region* only), seasonal swelling and shrinking, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**COMMENT:**

Soils (excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above) tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as *good ground* for *building* foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:

- (a) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width.
- (b) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width.

Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.

Definition	Source
<p><b>Means of escape from fire</b>, in relation to a <i>building</i> that has a floor area,—</p> <p>(a) means continuous unobstructed routes of travel from any part of the floor area of that <i>building</i> to a place of safety, and</p> <p>(b) includes all active and passive protection features required to warn people of <i>fire</i> and to assist in protecting people from the effects of <i>fire</i> in the course of their escape from the <i>fire</i>.</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Member span</b> The clear distance between supports, measured along the member.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Membrane</b> A non-metallic material, usually synthetic, used as a fully supported roof <i>cladding</i>, <i>deck</i> surface or, in conjunction with other <i>claddings</i>, as gutters or <i>flashings</i>.</p>	<b>CD-E2</b>
<p><b>Minister</b> means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Minor private stairway</b> A <i>private stairway</i> not on a main thoroughfare, and intended to provide infrequent access to a single room which is not a living area or kitchen.</p>	<b>CD-D1</b>
<p><b>MSG</b> Machine stress graded refers to timber that is initially sorted by machine, calibrated to NZS 3603. See also <b>VSG</b>.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Multi-unit dwelling</b> Applies to a <i>building</i> or use which contains more than one separate household or family.</p>	<b>CD-C</b>
<p><b>COMMENT:</b> For fire safety purposes each <i>household unit</i> is a separate <i>firecell</i>.</p>	
<p><b>N</b></p>	
<p><b>Natural draught</b> The flow produced by the tendency of warmed gases to rise.</p>	<b>CD-G4</b>
<p><b>Natural hazard</b> has the meaning given to it by section 71 of the Building Act 2004.</p> <p>Section 71(3) states:</p> <p>“(3) In this section and sections 72 to 74, natural hazard means any of the following:</p> <p>(a) erosion (including coastal erosion, bank erosion, and sheet erosion):</p> <p>(b) falling debris (including soil, rock, snow, and ice):</p> <p>(c) subsidence:</p> <p>(d) inundation (including flooding, overland flow, storm surge, tidal effects, and ponding):</p> <p>(e) slippage.”</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Net openable area</b> is the area of windows or doors or other opening measured on the face dimensions of the openable building element concerned.</p>	<b>CD-G4</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p><b>Network utility operator</b> means a person who—</p> <p>(a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy; or</p> <p>(b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) radiocommunications as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or</p> <p>(c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or</p> <p>(d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or</p> <p>(e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system</p>	BA04
<p>Amend 12 Oct 2011</p>	
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p><b>Nogging</b> See <b>dwang</b></p> <p><b>Nominal pile width</b> The least width of a pile in side view and is equal to the diameter in round piles.</p> <p><b>Non-combustible</b> Materials shall be classified as <i>non-combustible</i> or <i>combustible</i> when tested to: AS 1530 – Part 1.</p> <p><b>Non-loadbearing stud</b> A stud in a <i>non-loadbearing wall</i>.</p> <p><b>Non-loadbearing wall</b> A wall other than a <i>loadbearing wall</i>.</p> <p><b>Non-return valve</b> A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a hot or cold water system.</p> <p><b>Nosing</b> The rounded projecting edge of a stair tread.</p> <p><b>Notice to fix</b> has the meaning given to it by section 164(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p> <p>Section 164(2) states:</p> <p>“(2) A responsible authority must issue to the specified person concerned a notice (a notice to fix) requiring the person—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) to remedy the contravention of, or to comply with, this Act or the regulations; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) to correct the warrant of fitness; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) to properly comply with the inspection, maintenance, or reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule.”</p> <p><b>Notional boundary</b> The <i>boundary</i> which for <i>fire</i> safety purposes, is assumed to exist between two <i>buildings</i> on the same property under a single land title.</p>	Simple House CD-B1 CD-B1, CD-C Simple House Simple House CD-G12 CD-D1, CD-F4 BA04 CD-C
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p>	
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p><b>COMMENT:</b> A <i>notional boundary</i> may be located anywhere between the two <i>buildings</i> on the same property. It is not fixed and for the purposes of calculating permitted unprotected areas of each <i>building</i> it can be moved towards the other <i>building</i> thus maximising the permitted <i>unprotected area</i>.</p>	
<p>Amend 12 Oct 2011</p> <p><b>NUO system</b> means a system owned or controlled by a <i>network utility operator</i>.</p> <p><b>NZBC</b> New Zealand Building Code.</p>	BA04 CD-E2

Definition	Source
<b>O</b>	
<p><b>Occupant load</b> The greatest number of people likely to occupy a particular space within a <i>building</i>. It is determined by:</p> <p>(a) Multiplying the number of people per m<sup>2</sup> (occupant density) for the activity being undertaken, by the total floor area, or</p> <p>(b) For sleeping areas, counting the number of beds, or</p> <p>(c) For fixed seating areas, counting the number of seats.</p>	CD-C, CD-F6, CD-F7
<p><b>Occupied space</b> Any space within a <i>building</i> in which a <i>person</i> will be present from time to time during the <i>intended use</i> of the <i>building</i>.</p>	Code
<p><b>Open path</b> That part of an <i>escape route</i> (including <i>dead ends</i>) not protected by <i>fire</i> or <i>smoke separations</i>, and which terminates at a <i>final exit</i> or <i>exitway</i>.</p>	Code
<p><b>Open space</b> includes land on which there is and will be no <i>buildings</i> and which has no roof over any part of it other than overhanging eaves.</p>	CD-C
<p><b>Open vented storage water heater</b> A <i>water heater</i> incorporating a <i>vent pipe</i> which is permanently open to the atmosphere.</p>	CD-G12
<p><b>Other property—</b></p> <p>(a) means any land or <i>buildings</i>, or part of any land or <i>buildings</i>, that are—</p> <p>(i) not held under the same <i>allotment</i>; or</p> <p>(ii) not held under the same ownership; and</p> <p>(b) includes a road</p>	BA04
<p><b>Outdoor air</b> Air as typically comprising by volume:</p> <p>(i) oxygen 20.94%</p> <p>(ii) carbon dioxide 0.03%</p> <p>(iii) nitrogen and other inert gases 79.03%.</p>	Code
<p><b>Outfall</b> That part of the disposal system receiving <i>surface water</i> or <i>foul water</i> from the drainage system. For <i>foul water</i>, the <i>outfall</i> may include a <i>sewer</i> or a septic tank. For <i>surface water</i>, the <i>outfall</i> may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.</p>	Code
<p><b>Over-pressure protection</b> Devices preventing the pressure in piping or appliances from exceeding a predetermined value.</p>	CD-G11
<p><b>Owner</b>, in relation to land and any <i>buildings</i> on the land,—</p> <p>(a) means the <i>person</i> who—</p> <p>(i) is entitled to the rack rent from the land; or</p> <p>(ii) would be so entitled if the land were let to a tenant at a rack rent; and</p> <p>(b) includes—</p> <p>(i) the <i>owner</i> of the fee simple of the land; and</p> <p>(ii) any <i>person</i> who has agreed in writing, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to purchase the land or any leasehold estate or interest in the land or to take a lease of the land and who is bound by the agreement because the agreement is still in force.</p>	BA04

Definition	Source
<b>P</b>	
<b>Parallel flashing</b> A roof <i>flashing</i> that runs along the roof slope, parallel to the roof <i>cladding</i> profile. Also known as a longitudinal <i>flashing</i> .	CD-E2
<b>Parapet</b> A timber-framed wall that extends above the level of the roof <i>cladding</i> . Amend 12 Oct 2011   Refer also Enclosed balustrade.	CD-E2
<b>Passive stack ventilator</b> A system including a ventilation shaft which uses natural draught to ventilate spaces. Amend 11 Sep 2010	CD-G4
<b>Penetration</b> A pipe, cable or duct passing through an opening in a <i>fire separation</i> .	CD-C
<b>Penstocks</b> are conduits to control the flow of water in water supply, hydroelectric power and sewerage systems. Penstocks are normally equipped with a gate system and surge tank.	DG
<b>People with disabilities</b> People whose ability to use <i>buildings</i> is affected by mental, physical, hearing or sight impairment.	Code
<b>Performance criteria</b> in relation to a <i>building</i> , means those qualitative or quantitative criteria that the <i>building</i> is required to satisfy in performing its <i>functional requirement</i> .	BA04
<b>Permanent opening</b> An opening which cannot be closed, this implies that doors, windows etc are NOT permanent openings, although door undercuts are. Amend 11 Sep 2010	CD-G4
<b>Person includes—</b>	BA04
(a) the Crown; and	
(b) a corporation sole; and	
(c) a body of persons (whether corporate or unincorporate) Amend 12 Oct 2011	
<b>Person with a disability</b> means a <i>person</i> who has an impairment or a combination of impairments that limits the extent to which the <i>person</i> can engage in the activities, pursuits, and processes of everyday life, including, without limitation, any of the following:	BA04
(a) a physical, sensory, neurological, or intellectual impairment:	
(b) a mental illness.	
<b>Piping system</b> An assembly of pipes, pipe fittings, gaskets, bolting and pipe supports.	CD-G14
<b>Pitch line</b> The line joining the leading edge or <i>nosings</i> (if any) of successive stair treads within a single flight of <i>stairs</i> .	CD-F4 (Sep 07)
<b>Plans and specifications—</b>	BA04
(a) means the drawings, specifications, and other documents according to which a <i>building</i> is proposed to be <i>constructed, altered, demolished, or removed</i> ; and	
(b) includes the proposed procedures for inspection during the <i>construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building</i> ; and	
(c) in the case of the <i>construction or alteration of a building</i> , also includes—	
(i) the <i>intended use of the building</i> ; and	
(ii) the <i>specified systems</i> that the applicant for <i>building consent</i> considers will be required to be included in a <i>compliance schedule</i> required under section 100; and	

Definition	Source
(iii) the proposed procedures for inspection and routine maintenance for the purposes of the <i>compliance schedule</i> for those <i>specified systems</i> .	
<b>Plate</b> A timber member supported by a <i>foundation</i> or <i>studs</i> to support and distribute the load from floors, walls, <i>roofs</i> or ceilings. See <b>bottom plate, top plate</b> .	<b>Simple House</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	
<b>Plumbing system</b> Pipes, joints and fittings laid above ground and used for the conveyance of <i>foul water</i> to the <i>foul water drain</i> , and includes <i>vent pipes</i> .	<b>Code</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	
<b>Post</b> An isolated vertical member acting as a support.	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Potable (and potable water)</b> Water that is suitable for human consumption.	<b>CD-G12</b>
<b>Potential impact classification</b> is related to the consequence (effects) of the <i>dam</i> failing, if it should release its stored contents. Consequences include loss of life, socio-economic, financial and environmental.	<b>DG</b>
<b>Prescribed electrical work</b> has the meaning given to it by section 2(1) of the Electricity Act 1992.	<b>BA04, EA</b>
<b>Primary element</b> A <i>building element</i> providing the basic load bearing capacity to the structure, and which if affected by <i>fire</i> may initiate instability or premature structural collapse.	<b>CD-B2, CD-C</b>
<b>COMMENT:</b> Suspended floors in multi-storey <i>buildings</i> are <i>primary elements</i> .	
<b>Principal user</b> A member of the primary group for which a <i>building</i> was constructed, and therefore explicitly excludes <i>persons</i> or groups of <i>persons</i> providing care or control of that <i>principal user</i> group.	<b>Code</b>
<b>Privacy</b> The situation of being withdrawn from view.	<b>CD-G1</b>
<b>Private stairway</b> A <i>stairway</i> used, or intended to be used, by the occupants of a single <i>household unit</i> .	<b>CD-D1</b>
<b>Privy</b> A private room containing a receptacle (other than a WC) or an excavation for excreted liquid or solid human waste, and with a means of disposal or containment of the waste.	<b>CD-G1</b>
<b>Producer statements</b> are formal statements supplied by or on behalf of (i) an applicant for a <i>building consent</i> , or (ii) by or on behalf of a <i>person</i> who has carried out <i>building work</i> . that can be accepted by a <i>building consent authority</i> as verification that certain work will be or has been carried out in accordance with nominated performance requirements of the <i>Building Code</i> .	<b>HB</b>
<b>COMMENT:</b> Although no longer expressly referred to in the <i>Building Act 2004</i> , these could be accepted and considered as part of the plans or specifications.	
<b>Product certificate</b> means a certificate issued under section 269 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> that a <i>building consent authority</i> must accept as establishing compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> .	<b>HB</b>
<b>Product certification accreditation body</b> means the <i>person</i> referred to in section 261(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	<b>BA04</b>

Definition	Source
<p><b>Property</b> includes land, <i>buildings</i>, and goods; but does not include incorporeal forms of <i>property</i>.</p>	<b>BA04</b>
<p><b>Proprietary fasteners</b> <i>Proprietary fasteners</i> may be used where the fixing <i>capacity</i> of fixings are specifically identified in this [SH/AS1] <i>Acceptable Solution</i>. Manufacturers of a timber connector or fixing shall provide the following information on each package of fixings, or on a securely attached label:</p> <p>(a) the name, or registered trade name, or make and address of manufacturer (b) the materials used in manufacture including fasteners and corrosion protection (c) the load capacity of the timber connector or fixing in kN determined in accordance with the following equation:</p> $R = \varphi \times Q_k \times n \times k$ <p>Where:</p> <p>R = connector capacity in kN  <math>\varphi</math> = capacity reduction factor from NZS 3603  <math>Q_k</math> = characteristic value obtained by test in accordance with BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 or AS/NZS 2699: Part 2 as appropriate  n = number of tested elements making up the complete joint  k = modification factors from NZS 3603 (Section 4) as appropriate to specific application.</p> <p>(d) fastener's requirements (e) details of <i>intended use</i> (f) durability in accordance with Paragraph 2.5.4.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Protected path</b> That portion of an <i>exitway</i> within a <i>firecell</i> which is protected from the effects of smoke by <i>smoke separations</i>.</p>	<b>Code</b>
<p><b>Protected shaft</b> A space, other than a <i>safe path</i>, enclosed by <i>fire separations</i> or <i>external walls</i> used to house <i>building services</i>, lifts, or conveyors which pass from one <i>firecell</i> to another.</p>	<b>CD-C</b>
<p><b>Purlin</b> A horizontal member laid to span across <i>rafters</i> or trusses, and to which the roof <i>cladding</i> is attached.</p>	<b>CD-E2</b>
<p><b>Purlin</b> Includes <b>tile batten</b>. A horizontal member laid to span across <i>rafters</i> or trusses and to which the <i>roof cladding</i> is attached.</p>	<b>Simple House</b>
<p><b>Purpose group</b> The classification of spaces within a <i>building</i> according to the activity for which the spaces are used.</p>	<b>Code</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010



Definition	Source
<b>COMMENT:</b>	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where an easement, such as a right of way, occurs within an <i>allotment</i>, the <i>relevant boundary</i> shall remain the same as if the easement did not exist.</li> <li>2. <i>Boundaries</i> within a cross-lease or company lease or licence are shown on a survey plan. In some cases the <i>boundary</i> is the <i>external wall</i> or roof of a <i>building</i>.</li> <li>3. The unit title <i>boundaries</i> of principal units, accessory units, and common property are shown in the unit plan. A <i>boundary</i> is frequently an internal or <i>external wall</i>, an upper floor, or the roof of a <i>building</i>.</li> <li>4. A wall along a <i>boundary</i> between two <i>allotments</i> is called a "party wall" when the <i>owners</i> of the <i>allotments</i> each have legal rights in respect of that wall registered by way of easements on one or both titles. An internal wall between cross-leases, company leases, or unit titles, or between one of them and common property, is not generally called a party wall but in that case also the lessees, unit title holders, or corporate body concerned each have legal rights in respect of that wall. Such a wall separates areas which are <i>other property</i> in relation to each other, but the wall itself is part of each property. The <i>fire</i> protection consequence of that legal concept is that such a wall can be regarded as a <i>fire separation</i> providing protection against horizontal <i>fire</i> spread in each direction. In other words, that wall may provide the appropriate <i>FRR</i> instead of each property having its own wall of that <i>FRR</i>.</li> </ol>	
<b>Relief vent</b> A <i>vent pipe</i> which is connected to a <i>discharge stack</i> below the lowest branch connection and which connects at its upper end to the <i>discharge stack vent</i> or terminates as an open vent.	<b>CD-G13</b>
<b>Reservoir</b> Body of water impounded by one or more <i>dams</i> or dikes, inclusive of its shores and banks and of any facility or installation necessary for its operation.	<b>DG</b>
<b>Ribbon board</b> Includes <b>soffit plate</b> . A horizontal <i>framing</i> timber secured to, or checked into, the edges of <i>studs</i> and supporting <i>eaves bearers</i> .	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Ridge beam</b> A single beam that supports <i>rafters</i> of a <i>skillion roof</i> .	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Risk group A</b> , for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means <i>buildings</i> —	<b>Code</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) whose occupants are required to remain in the <i>building</i> until the main lighting system is restored; or</li> <li>(b) whose <i>evacuation time</i> is longer than 90 minutes.</li> </ol>	
<b>Risk group B</b> , for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means <i>buildings</i> —	<b>Code</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) whose <i>evacuation time</i> is 30 minutes or longer but not longer than 90 minutes; or</li> <li>(b) whose occupant load is more than 1 000.</li> </ol>	
<b>Risk group C</b> , for the purposes of performance F6.3.4, means <i>buildings</i> not in <i>risk group A</i> or <i>risk group B</i> .	<b>Code</b>
<b>Reservoir capacity</b> Total or gross storage capacity of the <i>reservoir</i> at full supply level.	<b>DG</b>
<b>Risk matrix</b> A table that allows the calculation of a <i>risk score</i> by the allocation and summing of scores for a range of design and location factors applying to a specific <i>building</i> design.	<b>CD-E2</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<b>Risk score</b> An aggregated numerical score for a proposed <i>building</i> as defined by E2/AS1. The <i>risk score</i> is determined by completion of the <i>risk matrix</i> .	CD-E2
<b>Road</b> has the meaning ascribed to it by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes a public place and also includes a motorway.	CD-C/LGA
<b>Rodding point</b> A removable cap at ground level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.	CD-E1, CD-G13
Amend 12 Oct 2011   <b>Roof</b> That part of a <i>building</i> having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of 60° or less to the horizontal.	CD-E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010   <b>Roof</b> That part of the <i>building</i> having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of between 10° and 35° to the horizontal. See <b>skillion roof</b> .	Simple House
Amend 12 Oct 2011   <b>Roof underlay</b> An absorbent permeable building paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water in association with <i>roof cladding</i> performance.	CD-E2
<b>Roof underlay</b> An absorbent, permeable paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water that may penetrate the <i>roof cladding</i> . The <i>roof underlay</i> shall have the properties in Table 23 of the <i>Acceptable Solution</i> E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture: (a) absorbency of 100 g/m <sup>2</sup> or greater (b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less (c) water resistance of 100 mm or greater (d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0 (e) shrinkage no more than 0.5% (f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010   <b>Room-sealed appliance</b> An appliance designed so that air for combustion neither enters from, nor combustion products enter into, the room in which the appliance is located.	CD-G4
Amend 11 Sep 2010   <b>Running bonds</b> , See <b>bond</b>	Simple House
<b>S</b>	
<b>Saddle flashing</b> A <i>flashing</i> used to weatherproof the junction between a horizontal and vertical surface.	CD-E2
<b>Safe path</b> That part of an <i>exitway</i> which is protected from the effects of <i>fire</i> by <i>fire separations</i> , <i>external walls</i> , or by distance when exposed to open air.	Code
<b>Safe place</b> A place of safety in the vicinity of a <i>building</i> , from which people may safely disperse after escaping the effects of a <i>fire</i> . It may be a place such as a street, <i>open space</i> , public space or an <i>adjacent building</i> .	Code
<b>Safety colour (green, red or yellow)</b> A colour of specified properties to which a safety meaning is attributed.	CD-F8
<b>Safety glass</b> means a glass so treated or combined with other materials as to reduce the likelihood of injury to <i>persons</i> when it is cracked or broken.	CD-F2

Definition	Source
<b>Safety shut-off system</b> An arrangement of valves and associated control systems which shuts off the supply of gas when required by a device which senses an unsafe condition.	CD-G10
<b>Safety sign</b> A particular type of sign which comprises a geometric form and a <i>safety colour</i> , together with a <i>safety symbol</i> or text (that is, words, letters, numbers or a combination of these) and gives a particular safety message.	CD-F8
<b>Safety symbol</b> means a graphic symbol used in a <i>safety sign</i> .	CD-F8
<b>Sanitary appliance</b> An appliance which is intended to be used for <i>sanitation</i> , but which is not a <i>sanitary fixture</i> . Included are machines for washing dishes and clothes.	Code
<b>Sanitary fixture</b> Any <i>fixture</i> which is intended to be used for <i>sanitation</i> .	Code
<b>Sanitation</b> The term used to describe the activities of washing and/or excretion carried out in a manner or condition such that the effect on health is minimised, with regard to dirt and infection.	Code
<b>Scaffolding</b> used in the course of the <i>construction</i> process, means any structure, framework, swinging stage, suspended <i>scaffolding</i> , or boatswain's chair, that is of a temporary nature and that is used or intended to be used for: the support or protection of workers engaged in, or in connection with <i>construction</i> work for the purpose of carrying out that work, or the support of materials used in connection with the work; and includes any plank, coupling, fastening, fitting, or device used in connection with the <i>construction</i> , erection, or use of <i>scaffolding</i> .	BA04
<b>Scupper</b> An opening in a <i>parapet</i> or <i>enclosed balustrade</i> to allow water to drain into a rainwater head.	CD-E2
<b>Sealant</b> A flexible neutral cure sealant for gap filling and weatherproofing that complies with: (a) Type F, Class 20 LM or 25 LM of ISO 11600, or (b) low modulus Type II Class A of Federal Specification TT-S-00230C.	Simple House
<b>Secondary element</b> A <i>building element</i> not providing load bearing capacity to the structure and if affected by <i>fire</i> , instability or collapse of the <i>building</i> structure will not occur.	CD-B2, CD-C
<b>Secondary flow path</b> The path over which <i>surface water</i> will follow if the drainage system becomes overloaded or inoperative.	CD-E1
<b>Secondary private stairway</b> A <i>private stairway</i> other than a <i>main</i> or <i>minor private stairway</i> , intended to provide access to another floor containing only bedrooms, bathroom or similar accommodation.	CD-D1
<b>Service ramp</b> means a ramp that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.	CD-D1
<b>Service stairway</b> means a <i>stairway</i> that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.	CD-D1
<b>Sewer</b> A <i>drain</i> that is under the control of, or maintained by, a <i>network utility operator</i> .	Code

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

	Definition	Source
Amend 12 Oct 2011	<b>Sill support bar</b> A bar or mechanism complying with EM6, E2/VM1 tests, and Clause B2 of the <i>Building Code</i> , and used to support the weight of aluminium window and door joinery that is installed over drained cavities.	CD-E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Simple house</b> A house that is described in Section 1 of this [SH/AS1] <i>Acceptable Solution</i> .	Simple House
	<b>Sitework</b> means work on a <i>building</i> site, including earthworks, preparatory to, or associated with the <i>construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building</i> .	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Skillion roof</b> A pitched <i>roof</i> where the ceiling <i>lining</i> is parallel and close to the <i>roof cladding</i> . The <i>roof</i> may be mono-pitch or may consist of more than one <i>roof</i> plane. These <i>roofs</i> may have <i>rafters</i> exposed below the ceiling.	Simple House
	<b>Smokecell</b> A space within a <i>building</i> which is enclosed by an envelope of <i>smoke separations, or external walls, roofs, and floors</i> .	CD-C
	<b>Smoke control door</b> A <i>doorset</i> with closefitting single or multi-leaves which are impermeable to the passage of smoke, fitted with smoke seals and installed within a <i>smoke separation</i> . The door, in the event of smoke, if not already closed, will close automatically and be held closed.	CD-C
	<b>COMMENT:</b> 1. A <i>smoke control door</i> may be held closed by use of a door closer. The door need not be latched. 2. Requirements for <i>smoke control doors</i> are given in C/AS1 Paragraph 6.19.1 and 6.19.8, and Appendix C Paragraph C8.1.	
	<b>Smoke developed index (SDI)</b> That index number for smoke developed when determined according to the <i>standard test</i> method for measuring the properties of lining materials.	CD-C
	<b>Smoke separation</b> Any vertical, horizontal or inclined <i>building element</i> with <i>known smoke-stopping or smoke-leakage characteristics</i> .	Code
	<b>Socket outlet</b> An accessory fixed to a wall or ceiling and designed to accept a plug that extends the electrical supply to an appliance by means of a flexible cable.	CD-G2
	<b>Soffit bearer</b> See <b>eaves bearer</b> .	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Soffit plate</b> See <b>ribbon board</b> .	Simple House
	<b>Soft edge</b> A compatible soft edging seamed onto <i>flashings</i> to provide closure to profiled <i>cladding</i> .	CD-E2
	<b>Soil fixture</b> A <i>sanitary fixture</i> constructed to receive solid and/or liquid excreted human waste. It includes bedpan disposal units, slop sinks, urinals, water closet pans, and water-flushed sanitary towel disposal units.	CD-G1, CD-G13
	<b>Sound transmission class (STC)</b> A single number rating derived from measured values of transmission loss in accordance with classification ASTM E 413, Determination of Sound Transmission Class. It provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations.	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Spacing or spaced</b> The distance at which members are spaced, measured centre to centre.	Simple House

	Definition	Source
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Spans</b> See <b>member span</b> and <b>support span</b> .	<b>Simple House</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	<b>Specific design</b> Design and detailing for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> , of a proposed part or parts of a <i>building</i> which are not shown in this Acceptable Solution.	<b>CD-E2</b>
	<b>Specific design</b> Design and detailing of a proposed <i>building</i> or parts of a <i>building</i> , demonstrating compliance with the Building Code, that shall be provided to the <i>building consent authority</i> for assessment and approval as part of the <i>building consent</i> process. <i>Buildings</i> , or parts of <i>buildings</i> , requiring <i>specific design</i> are beyond the scope of the <i>Simple House Acceptable Solution</i> .	<b>Simple House</b>
	<b>Specified features</b> , for the purposes of Clause F6, means the following: (a) <i>building elements</i> that may act as obstructions: (b) safety features required under clauses of the <i>Building Code</i> other than Clause F6 (for example, <i>handrails</i> required under Clause D1): (c) changes in direction: (d) stairs and ramps: (e) escape doors: (f) entries to a <i>safe place</i> .	<b>Code</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>Specified intended life</b> has the meaning given to it by section 113(3) of the Building Act 2004. Section 113(3) states: “(3) In subsection (2), <b>specified intended life</b> , in relation to a building, means the period of time, as stated in an application for a building consent or in the consent itself, for which the building is proposed to be used for its intended use.”	<b>BA04</b>
	<b>Specified system—</b> (a) means a system or feature that— (i) is contained in a <i>building</i> ; and (ii) contributes to the proper functioning of the <i>building</i> (for example, an automatic sprinkler system); And (iii) is declared by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a <i>specified system</i> for the purposes of this Act; and (b) includes a cable car.	<b>BA04</b>
	<b>Spread of flame index (SFI)</b> That index number for spread of flame which is determined according to the <i>standard test</i> method for measuring the properties of lining materials.	<b>CD-C</b>
	<b>Spillway</b> Weir, channel, conduit, tunnel, gate or other structure designed to permit discharges from the reservoir.	<b>DG</b>

Definition	Source
<p><b>Stability</b> In the context of <i>fire</i> protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a <i>primary element</i>, when subject to the <i>standard test</i> for <i>fire</i> resistance, has continued to carry its <i>fire</i> design load without failure.</p> <p><b>COMMENT:</b> The <i>fire</i> design load should be as specified in B1/VM1.</p>	<p><b>Code</b></p>
<p><b>Stairway</b> A series of steps or stairs with or without landings, including all necessary <i>handrails</i> and giving access between two different levels.</p>	<p><b>CD-C, CD-D1</b></p>
<p><b>Stainless steel flashings</b> Stainless steel <i>flashings</i> shall be:</p> <p>(a) minimum thickness of 0.45 mm, and</p> <p>(b) Type 304 or 316 stainless steel in accordance with Table 1 of ISO/TS 15510.</p>	<p><b>Simple House</b></p>
<p><b>Stanchion</b> A connecting device, fixed into the structure of a <i>building</i>, that provides support for <i>handrails</i>, aerials and similar structures.</p>	<p><b>CD-E2</b></p>
<p><b>Standards</b> means specifications for <i>building</i> materials, methods, processes or practices that provide a basis for determining consistent and acceptable minimum levels of quality, performance, safety and reliability.</p> <p><b>COMMENT:</b> Standards are developed by organisations that are recognised by the Government. In New Zealand, standards are developed by a trading arm of the Standards Council, a crown entity operating under the Standards Act 1988. In Australia, standards are developed by Standards Australia, which is recognised through a memorandum of understanding with the Commonwealth Government.</p>	<p><b>HB</b></p>
<p><b>Standard test</b> A test method which is recognised as being appropriate for the <i>fire</i> protection properties being assessed.</p> <p><b>COMMENT:</b> A list of <i>standard test</i> methods is given in Appendix C of C/AS1.</p>	<p><b>CD-C</b></p>
<p><b>Standard year</b> For the purposes of determining natural lighting, the hours between 8 am and 5 pm each day with an allowance being made for daylight saving.</p>	<p><b>Code</b></p>
<p><b>Statutory authority</b> means an authority or organisation that has the statutory power to classify or register land or <i>buildings</i> for any purpose.</p>	<p><b>BA04</b></p>
<p><b>Stopend</b> A turn-up at the upper edge of profiled metal <i>cladding</i>, or at the end of gutters and some types of <i>flashings</i>.</p> <p><b>COMMENT:</b> A <i>stopend</i> assists the control of moisture by ensuring any moisture reaching the edge of the roofing is deflected from further entry.</p>	<p><b>CD-E2</b></p>
<p><b>Storage water heater</b> A <i>water tank</i> with an integral <i>water heater</i> for the storage of hot water.</p>	<p><b>CD-G12</b></p>
<p><b>Storey</b> That portion of a <i>building</i> included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor immediately above, except the top <i>storey</i> shall be that portion of a <i>building</i> included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.</p>	<p><b>CD-E2</b></p>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<b>Town gas</b> A manufactured gas.	CD-G11
<b>Toxic environment</b> An environment that contains <i>contaminants</i> that can contaminate the water supply in concentrations greater than those included in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standard 1995.	CD-G12
<b>Trade</b> means any trade, business, industry, profession, occupation, activity of commerce, or undertaking relating to— (a) the supply or acquisition of goods or services; or (b) the acquisition of <i>household units</i> or any interest in land.	BA04
<b>Transverse flashing</b> A roof <i>flashing</i> that runs across the roof slope, at right angles to the roof <i>cladding</i> profile.	CD-E2
<b>Trap</b> A chamber which is installed in the <i>drain</i> and incorporates features to intercept and retain floatable debris.	CD-E1
<b>Trapezoidal</b> A type of profiled metal <i>cladding</i> with symmetrical or asymmetrical crests, with troughs between the crests.	CD-E2
<b>Travel distance</b> The length of the <i>escape route</i> as a whole or the individual lengths of its parts, namely: (a) <i>Open paths</i> (b) <i>Protected paths</i> and (c) <i>Safe paths</i> .	Code
<b>Trickle ventilator</b> A controllable ventilation opening through the external envelope to the outside to provide background ventilation.	CD-G4
<b>Trimmer</b> A member supporting the wall <i>framing</i> beneath, or over an opening in a <i>non-loadbearing wall</i> and carrying wind loads to the <i>trimmer studs</i> .	Simple House
<b>Trimmer stud</b> A <i>stud</i> located on the side of an opening.	Simple House
<b>Trough profile</b> A type of profiled metal <i>cladding</i> comprising vertical ribs with flat, or lightly profiled pans between the ribs. Also known as ribbed, secret fixed or tray profile.	CD-E2

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

## Definition

## Source

## U

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**Underlay** The material used behind a *roof* or *wall cladding*. Refer **Wall underlay** and **Roof underlay**. **CD-E2**

**Unisex facilities** Facilities available for use by either sex. **CD-G1**

**COMMENT:**

*Unisex facilities* may also be described as both gender facilities.

**Unitary authority** has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002. **BA04/LGA**

Section 5(1) states:

“**unitary authority**” means a territorial authority that has the responsibilities, duties, and powers of a regional council conferred on it under—

- (a) the provisions of any Act; or
- (b) an Order in Council giving effect to a reorganisation scheme”

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**Universal access** Where elements and spaces are accessible to and usable by people of all ages and abilities to the greatest extent possible. **Simple House**

**Unprotected area** in relation to an *external wall* of a *building* means: **Code**

(a) Any part of the *external wall* which has less than the required *FRR*.

For example, a non *fire* rated window, door or other opening or sheet metal.

(b) Any part of the *external wall* which has *combustible* material more than 1.0mm thick attached to or applied to its external face, whether for *cladding* or any other purpose.

**uPVC flashings** uPVC *flashings* shall be a minimum of 0.75 mm thick and: **Simple House**

(a) comply with the requirements of the following Clauses of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2:

- ii) Clause 9.2 Impact resistance
- iii) Clause 9.3 Tensile strength
- iv) Clause 9.4 Colourfastness and impact resistance following ultraviolet light exposure.

(b) where exposed to the weather, shall also comply with Section 8 of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2.

(c) have a finish colour with a reflectance of 40% or more, when measured in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E903.

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

## V

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

**Valley board** A board laid to support a *valley gutter*. **Simple House**

**Valley gutter** A gutter running down the valley formed by the intersection of two pitched roof surfaces. **CD-E2**

**Valve vented storage water heater (unvented storage water heater)** A *storage water heater* in which the required venting to the atmosphere is controlled by a valve. **CD-G12**

**Vapour barrier** Sheet material or coating having a low water-vapour transmission, and used to minimise water-vapour penetration in *buildings*. (*Vapour barriers* are sometimes referred to as *damp-proof membranes*.) **CD-B2**



	Definition	Source
	<b>Vent line</b> A pipe or tube which conveys gas to a safe place outside the <i>building</i> from a gas pressure <i>regulator</i> relief valve.	CD-G10
	<b>Vent pipe</b> A pipe for the purpose of protecting <i>water seals</i> that at its upper end is either open to the atmosphere or fitted with an <i>air admittance</i> valve and that at its lower end is connected to a <i>discharge pipe</i> .	CD-G13
	<b>Verification Method</b> means a method by which compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> may be verified.	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<b>VSG</b> Visual stress graded, refers to verified timber that is initially sorted visually in accordance with NZS 3603. See also <b>MSG</b> .	Simple House
	<b>W</b>	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	<b>Wall</b> refer <b>External wall</b> .	CD-E2
	<b>Wall area</b> , in relation to a <i>building</i> , means the area (expressed in square metres) of internally-exposed <i>external walls</i> , including any door openings, of the <i>building</i> .	Code
	<b>Wall bracing element</b> A section of wall that performs a <i>bracing</i> function.	Simple House
	<b>Wall underlay</b> An absorbent synthetic wrap used as part of the wall <i>cladding system</i> to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which may occasionally penetrate the wall <i>cladding</i> is directed back to the exterior of the <i>building</i> .	Simple House
	The <i>wall underlay</i> shall have the properties in Table 23 of the <i>Acceptable Solution</i> E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture:	
	(a) absorbency – no requirement	
	(b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less	
	(c) water resistance of 20 mm or greater	
	(d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0	
	(e) shrinkage no more than 0.5%	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	(f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.	
	<b>Wall underlay</b> A building paper, synthetic material or rigid sheathing used as part of the <i>wall cladding system</i> to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the <i>wall cladding</i> is directed back to the exterior of the <i>building</i> .	CD-E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	<b>Waste pipe</b> A <i>discharge pipe</i> that conveys the discharge from <i>waste water fixtures</i> to a <i>gully trap</i> .	CD-G13
	<b>Waste water fixture</b> A <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> used to receive wastes, and which is not a <i>soil fixture</i> .	CD-G13
	<b>Water heater</b> A device for heating water.	CD-B2, CD-G12
	<b>Water main</b> A water supply pipe that is under the control, or maintained by a <i>network utility operator</i> .	Code
	<b>Waterproof and waterproofing</b> The complete and total resistance of a <i>building element</i> to the ingress of any moisture.	CD-E2
	<b>Water seal</b> The depth of water that can be retained in a <i>water trap</i> .	CD-G2, CD-G13

Definition	Source
<b>Water supply system</b> Pipes, fittings and tanks used or intended to be used for the storage and reticulation of water from a <i>water main</i> or other water source to <i>sanitary fixtures</i> , <i>sanitary appliances</i> and fittings within a <i>building</i> .	<b>Code</b>
<b>Water tank (vessel)</b> A covered fixed container for storing hot or cold water.	<b>CD-G12</b>
<b>Water trap</b> A fitting designed to retain a depth of water that prevents foul air and gases escaping from the <i>plumbing system</i> or <i>foul water drainage system</i> and entering a <i>building</i> .	<b>CD-G2, CD-G13</b>
<b>Weathertightness and weathertight</b> Terms used to describe the resistance of a <i>building</i> to the weather. <i>Weathertightness</i> is a state where water is prevented from entering and accumulating behind the <i>cladding</i> in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the <i>building elements</i> .	<b>CD-E2</b>
<b>COMMENT:</b> The term <i>weathertightness</i> is not necessarily the same as <i>waterproof</i> . However, a <i>weathertight building</i> , even under severe weather conditions, is expected to limit moisture ingress to inconsequential amounts, insufficient to cause undue dampness inside <i>buildings</i> and damage to <i>building elements</i> . Moisture that may occasionally enter is able to harmlessly escape or evaporate.	
<b>Weathertightness and weathertight</b> Terms used to describe the resistance of a <i>building</i> to the weather.	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Wet area</b> An area within a <i>building</i> supplied with water from a water supply system including bathrooms and showers, laundries, sanitary compartments and kitchen areas.	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Wetwall</b> The exterior <i>cladding</i> on a wall with a <i>drained cavity</i> .	<b>CD-E2</b>
<b>Wharenui</b> A communal meeting house having a large open floor area used for both assembly and sleeping in the traditional Maori manner.	<b>CD-C, CD-H1</b>
<b>Wind zone</b> Categorisation of wind force experienced on a particular site as determined in NZS 3604, Section 5.	<b>CD-E2</b>
<b>COMMENT:</b> Maximum ultimate limit state speeds are: Low <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 32 m/s Medium <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 37 m/s High <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 44 m/s Very high <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 50 m/s Extra high <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 55 m/s. <i>Specific design</i> is required for wind speeds greater than 55 m/s.	
<b>Wire dog</b> Galvanised or stainless steel wire, D or Z shaped nail, spiked at each end. Used for fixing timber together to resist uplift	<b>Simple House</b>
<b>Working day</b> means any day except— (a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, the Sovereign's Birthday, Labour Day, and Waitangi Day; and (b) the day observed in the appropriate area as the anniversary of the province of which the area forms a part; and (c) a day in the period beginning on 20 December in any year and ending with the close of 10 January in the following year.	<b>BA04</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010Amend 12  
Oct 2011Amend 11  
Sep 2010

# Index

(Revised by Amendment 6)

This is a complete index for the New Zealand Building Code and Compliance Documents.

## A

### Access

see **Access Routes**, and **Mechanical Installations for Access**

Access chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Access points

see Maintenance access to drains

Access to a facility

food and work areas..... **G1/AS1** 3.2, Figure 10

lobbies..... **G1/AS1** 6.3.1

unisex facilities..... **G1/AS1** 1.1.5 c)

**Access Routes**..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 1.4.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.3 a),  
1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.6.1, 1.7.1, 1.8.1,  
2.0, 5.1.3, Figure 27

see also Accessible routes, Activity space, Doors, Escape routes, Handrails, Height clearances, Level access routes, Mechanical Installations for Access, a Person with a disability, Ramps, Stairs, Obstructions, Vehicles, Wheelchairs

access to buildings..... **NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (a) (b), D1.3.3 (a) (b)**

access within buildings..... **NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (c), D1.3.5**

corridors..... **NZBC/D1.3.1 (c)**, F6.3.1

level access routes..... **D1/AS1** 2.0

protection from falling..... **D1/AS1** 2.3

slip resistance..... **D1/AS1** 2.1, Table 2

width..... **D1/AS1** 2.2

location..... **D1/AS1** 1.1

principal entrance..... **D1/AS1** 1.1

service and maintenance personnel..... **D1/AS1** 11.0.3

Access to facilities..... **NZBC/D1.3.3 (c)**, G1.3.5; **G3/AS1** Figure 1

Accessible accommodation units..... **D1/AS1** 9.0, 9.1, 9.1.1, 9.2.1, Table 9

see also a Person with a disability

bedrooms..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

dining areas..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

facilities..... **D1/AS1** 9.2

kitchens..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 b) ; **G3/AS1** 1.5.2, Figure 1

laundry..... **G2/AS1** 1.2, Figure 2

sitting areas..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

toilets and baths..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 a)

Accessible routes..... **NZBC/D1.3.3, D1.3.4; D1/AS1** 1.1.1 to 1.1.3, 1.5.5 b), 2.1.1,  
2.2.1, 7.0.1, 7.0.6, 11.0.1, Figure 27

access to performance areas..... **D1/AS1** 8.2

Accessible units..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.3

Activity space..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (a), D1.3.4 (b), G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b), G5.3.3**

Aged, homes for

see Old people's homes

Air

see also **Ventilation**

airflow control..... **NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1** 3.0

changes..... **G4/VM1** 1.0.1

ducts..... **C/AS1** 6.9.5, 6.19.14, 6.20.20, 6.20.21

purity..... **G4/VM1** 2.0

Amend 11 Sep 2010	Air-handling systems .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.1 b)
	<b>Airborne and Impact Sound</b> .....	<b>G6</b>
	impact insulation class (IIC).....	<b>NZBC/G6.3.2</b>
	noise transmission between abutting occupancies.....	<b>NZBC/G6.1, G6.2</b>
	sound insulation tests .....	<b>G6/VM1</b> 2.0
	sound transmission class (STC).....	<b>NZBC/G6.3.1; G6/VM1</b> 1.0
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Alerting devices .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2, 2.2.2 b)
	audible .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2 c) f)
	visual .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 2.1.2 c) f)
	Alerting the Fire Service .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.2, 1.2.7, 2.1.2 a), 2.2
	Alternative solutions	
	accessible routes .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 11.0
	bedding and backfilling drains.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.8
Amend 11 Sep 2010	laundry tubs.....	<b>G2/AS1</b> 1.0.3
	open vented storage water heaters.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.9.1
	solid waste storage .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.1
	storage water heaters	
	seismic restraint .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.11.4
	thermal resistance.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 1.1.5 (Comment)
	unvented (valve vented) storage water heaters .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.10.1, Figure 14
	watertightness testing .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 7.5
	<b>Ancillary Buildings</b> .....	<b>NZBC/A1</b> 8.0, <b>D1.2.1, D1.3.2 (h),</b> <b>D1.3.3, G1.3.5, G8.2, G12.3.0</b>
	Apartments	
	see <b>Housing</b> , multi-unit dwellings	
	Appliances	
	see Sanitary appliances	
	Aprons.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2
	<b>Artificial Light</b> .....	<b>G8; NZBC/H1.2 (c), H1.3.5; D1/AS1</b> 1.5.4 (Comment), 1.8, 4.6;
	adequate lighting.....	<b>NZBC/G8.2</b>
	energy consumption .....	<b>H1/AS1</b> 6.0
	minimum illuminance.....	<b>NZBC/G8.3; D1/AS1</b> 4.6.1, Table 8, <b>G8/AS1</b> 1.0.1, Table 1
	wattage required.....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 4.6.1, Table 8; <b>G8/AS1</b> 1.0.1, Table 1
	Asbestos	
	see <b>Hazardous Building Materials</b>	
	Assembly care buildings	
	see Communal non-residential buildings	
	Assembly service buildings	
	see Communal non-residential buildings	
	Automatic extinguishers.....	<b>G11/AS1</b> 6.0

**B**

- Backflow prevention  
see Protection of water supplies
- Balconies..... **C/AS1** 3.14.6 b), 3.14.7, 3.15.7,7.8.7, Figures 3.18 and 3.22
- Banks..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**  
see also Commercial buildings
- Amend 12 | Barges ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.5, 8.3.9, 9.6.8.2, 9.6.9.4, Figures 36, 92 and 97  
Oct 2011 | see also Gutters, barges and fascias
- Barriers.....NZBC/F4.3.1, F4.3.4, F4.3.5, F5.3.2, F5.3.4; **D1/AS1** 1.7;  
**F4/AS1** 1.0; **F5/AS1** 1.0  
see also **Access Routes**, Handrails, **Safety from Falling**,  
Timber barriers
- Amend 11 | accessible route ..... **D1/AS1** 2.3.1  
Sep 2010 |
- Amend 11 | construction ..... **F4/AS1** 1.2, Figures 1-4  
Sep 2010 | construction site..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.6
- fences..... **F5/AS1** 1.1, 1.1.2  
around water hazards ..... **F5/AS1** 1.2  
for specific hazards ..... **F5/AS1** 1.0.2  
heights..... **F4/AS1** 1.1, Table 1  
hoardings..... **F5/AS1** 1.1, 1.1.3, 1.1.5  
viewing windows ..... **F5/AS1** 1.1.4  
parapet and rail barriers..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.3, Figure 5  
safety enclosures for ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22  
scaffolding..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.6  
stair barriers ..... **F4/AS1** Figure 4  
toeboards ..... **F5/AS1** 1.4  
types of barriers ..... **F5/AS1** 1.0.3
- Basements ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.2 i), 3.7.1, 3.15.2, 4.5.15, 6.9.3, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19
- Amend 12 | see also Floors, basement floors  
Oct 2011 |
- Basins..... **G1/AS1** 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1; **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, 5.5.2, Table 2
- Baths ..... **G1/AS1** Table 2; **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Bedrooms  
see Habitable spaces
- Bidets ..... **G1/AS1** 2.4; **G13/AS1** 5.5.2, Table 2
- Boarding Houses  
see Communal residential buildings
- Boundary  
see Notional boundary, Relevant boundaries
- Bridges  
see Ancillary buildings
- Building construction  
non-solid construction ..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4  
solid construction..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4  
thermal envelope ..... **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.0, 2.1.3, 2.1.4  
thermal resistance (R-value)..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.4.1,  
**H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.3.1, 2.3.2
- Amend 11 | Building elements ..... **NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.3, B2.3, E2.3.2, E2.3.3,**  
Sep 2010 |

**E2.3.4, E2.3.5, E2.3.6, E3.2, E3.3.5, F3.3 (f),  
G3.3.2 (b) (c), G6.2, G9.3.1 (a) (e); B1/VM4 1.0.1;  
C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.2.1, 5.6.1**

see also Floors, Ceilings, Roofs  
elements in contact with the ground..... **NZBC/E2.3.3**  
primary elements..... **C/AS1** 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 a), c), 5.6.1 a),  
5.7.1, 5.7.4, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.9, 6.14.3, 7.1.2 b),  
7.8.10 b), 7.9.4, 7.9.5 a), 7.10.3, 7.10.4, C7.1.1  
requiring noise control..... **G6/AS1** 1.0.2, Figure 1  
secondary elements..... **C/AS1** 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 b), 5.6.1 a),  
5.7.1, 5.7.8, 7.1.2 b), 7.10.3, C7.1.1  
unrated primary..... **C/AS1** 5.9.4, Figure 5.2

Building height..... **C/AS1** 5.7.6 c), 7.11.3 a), 7.11.4

Amend 11 | Building performance index  
Sep 2010 | see Energy efficiency provisions

Building site..... **E1/VM1** 3.2.2, 4.0.1, 4.1.10, **E1/AS1** 1.0.1  
evaluation..... **E1/VM1** 1.0.3

#### Buildings

air-supported structures..... **C/AS1** 6.20.18  
atriums..... **C/AS1** 6.22  
building elements..... **B1/VM4** 2.0.3  
building separation..... **NZBC/B1.3.3 (o)**  
car parking..... **C/AS1** 6.8.4, 6.10.3 to 6.10.6, 7.8.2, 7.9.16, Figure 6.2  
carports..... **C/AS1** 7.8.10 (Comment)  
commercial..... **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.0.2, **H1/AS1** 1.0.1, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 6.1.1  
communal non-residential..... **H1/VM1** 1.0, **H1/AS1** 1.0.1, 1.0.4, 6.1.1

Amend 11 | communal residential..... **H1/VM1** 1.0, **H1/AS1** 1.0.1  
Sep 2010 | dwellings

attached and multi-unit..... **C/AS1** 1.3.5, 1.3.6  
detached..... **C/AS1** 1.3.3

Amend 11 | earth buildings..... **B1/VM1** 8.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0, **E2/AS2** 1.0  
Sep 2010 |

Amend 11 | education..... **C/AS1** 3.8.4, 6.20.7  
Sep 2010 |

grandstands..... **C/AS1** 3.16.7  
hospitals..... **C/AS1** 6.6.6  
hotels, motels and accommodation..... **C/AS1** 2.2.3  
housing..... **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.1, **H1/AS1** 1.0, 2.0  
detached dwellings..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.3, 1.2.1  
group dwellings..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.3  
multi-unit dwellings..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.3, 1.2.1, **H1/AS1** 2.1.2  
wharenui..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.3

Amend 11 | industrial..... **H1/VM1** 1.0.1, 1.0.2, **H1/AS1** 1.0.2, 1.0.3  
Sep 2010 |

intended life

see **Durability**

intended use

see Intended use

Amend 11 | large buildings..... **H1/VM1** 1.0.1, 1.3, **H1/AS1** 1.0.2, 2.2.1, 4.0.1

Amend 12 | masonry buildings..... **B1/AS1** 2.0, **B1/AS3** 1.1.1

Amend 11 | membrane structures..... **NZBC/C4.1.1; C/AS1** 6.20.17 to 6.20.19, **C3.1.1**

Sep 2010 | minimum floor level..... **E1/AS1** 2.0, Figures 1 and 2

multi-storey buildings..... **C/AS1** 2.2.5, 6.12.2

open air auditoriums..... **C/AS1** 3.16.5

open sided buildings..... **C/AS1** 7.8.8 to 7.8.10, Figure 7.10

purpose group classification..... **C/AS1** 2.2, Table 2.1

Amend 11 | reference buildings..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, 1.1.3, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4  
Sep 2010 |

remaining occupied during fire..... **C/AS1** 5.6.9

residential community care..... **C/AS1** 2.4

seasonal use buildings..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 c)

single-floor buildings..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 a) b)

*Buildings (continued)*

	siteworks	
	<i>see</i> <b>Structure</b>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	small buildings.....	<b>H1/VM1</b> 1.0.1, 1.1.1, <b>H1/AS1</b> 1.0.2, 2.1, 4.0.1
	taverns.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 2.2.3
	theatres .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.3.1, 6.19.9, Figure 6.13
	three-floor buildings.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.2 b)
Amend 12 Oct 2011	three storey buildings.....	<b>G13/AS1</b> Figure 7
	timber framed buildings.....	<b>B1/AS1</b> 3.0, <b>B1/AS3</b> 1.1.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	two-floor buildings .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.2 a) b)
	wharenui.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), 6.7.9, <b>H1/VM1</b> 1.1.3

## C

- Call points..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.4
- Camping grounds..... **NZBC/G2.2**, G2.3.4; **G1/AS1** 3.4.2, Tables 1 to 3; **G2/AS1** Table 1  
see *also* Communal residential buildings
- Amend 11  
Sep 2010 | Car park ventilation ..... **G4/AS1** 1.5.4
- Car parking buildings  
see Commercial buildings, Vehicles
- Carports  
see Outbuildings
- Catchment  
characteristics ..... **E1/VM1** 1.0.2 a), 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.3, 4.2.1
- Ceilings..... **NZBC/G6.3.1**; **G3/AS1** 2.1.2, 2.2.3  
floor/ceiling assemblies ..... **G6/AS1** Figure 3
- Centres for people with disabilities  
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Child care centres  
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential Buildings
- Amend 11  
Sep 2010  
Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Children ..... **NZBC/D1.3.3 (h)**, **F4.3.3**, **F4.3.4 (f)**, F4.3.5 (a), F5.2 (d),  
F5.3.3, G15.3.2 (g); **D1/AS1** 4.1.8 a);  
**F4/AS1** 1.2.1, Figures 1-4; **F5/AS1** 1.0.2  
  
See *also* Early childhood centres
- Chimneys ..... **B1/AS1** 1.2, 8.0, **B1/AS3** 2.1; **C/AS1** 9.5, Figure 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3  
bracing units..... **B1/AS3** 1.9, 1.9.3, 1.9.6, Table 2  
brick chimneys ..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) b), 1.2.1 a), 1.6.2 a),  
1.7.1, 1.7.6, 1.8.1, 1.8.5 a), Figures 2 to 4 and 7, Table 1  
cantilever height..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.2  
chimney bases ..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.3 a), 1.6.1, 1.9.4 b)  
chimney breasts..... **B1/AS3** 1.5, Table 1  
chimney depth..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.3  
chimney height..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.2  
chimney liners ..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.4  
chimney lintels ..... **B1/AS3** Table 1  
chimney materials ..... **B1/AS3** 1.8  
chimney stacks..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.6.1  
chimney wall thickness..... **B1/AS3** 1.2, 1.2.1  
chimney width..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.3  
concrete chimneys..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 b) c), 1.6.2 a) b),  
1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.2, 1.8.5 b), Figures 4 and 5, Table 1  
concrete masonry ..... **B1/AS3** 1.8.4  
floor brackets..... **B1/AS3** 1.7.1, 1.7.3 to 1.7.5, 1.9.4 b) c), Figure 6  
foundations..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.1.3 a), 1.3, 1.3.1,  
1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.7.4, 1.7.5, 1.8.4, Figure 1  
foundation slabs ..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.3.2, 1.7.4, 1.7.5  
gathers ..... **B1/AS3** 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.7.5  
hearths ..... **B1/AS3** 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3  
hearth slabs ..... **B1/AS3** 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3  
packers ..... **B1/AS3** 1.7.2, 1.7.6 c)  
precast pumice concrete chimneys..... **B1/AS3** 1.1.1 b), 1.1.3 a) c),  
1.2.1 c), 1.6.2 b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.3,  
1.8.5 c), Figures 5 and 7, Table 1  
compressive strength ..... **B1/AS3** 1.8.3 c)  
construction of ..... **B1/AS3** 1.8.3  
restraint ..... **B1/AS3** 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.13, Figures 6 and 7  
roof brackets ..... **B1/AS3** 1.7.1, 1.7.3, 1.7.4, Figure 6  
roof ties ..... **B1/AS3** 1.7.5  
structural diaphragms ..... **B1/AS3** 1.9.5  
wall ties ..... **B1/AS3** 1.7.5, 1.7.7, 1.7.8  
closely spaced wall ties..... **B1/AS3** 1.7.5, 1.9.4 c)
- Amend 11  
Sep 2010 |



- Churches  
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Cinemas ..... **NZBC/G5.3.5**  
see also Communal non-residential buildings
- Cladding finish colours ..... **E2/AS1 2.4**
- Classified uses ..... **NZBC/A1**
- Cleaners' sinks ..... **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Clubrooms  
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Cold water expansion valves (explosion control valves) ..... **G12/AS1** 6.3.3 a), 6.6.2, 6.6.3,  
Figures 8 to 10, Table 6  
installation ..... **G12/AS1** 6.6.5  
relief valve drains ..... **G12/AS1** 6.7, Figures 8 to 10 and 13
- Colleges  
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Commercial buildings ..... **NZBC/A1 5.0, E3.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b)**, G3.3.6,  
G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (c);  
**G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0**
- Communal non-residential buildings ..... **NZBC/A1 4.0, E1.3.2, E3.3.1,**  
**G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4**, G5.3.5, G8.2,  
G9.3.4, H1.2 (c); **H1/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4**
- Amend 11  
Sep 2010 | assembly care ..... **NZBC/A1 4.0.3**  
assembly service ..... **NZBC/A1 4.0.2, H1.2 (a)**  
halls ..... **NZBC/G5.3.5**  
places of assembly ..... **D1/AS1 8.0**
- Communal residential buildings ..... **NZBC/A1 3.0, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4;**  
**D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1.1; H1/AS1 1.0.1**  
community care ..... **NZBC/A1 4.0.2**  
community service ..... **NZBC/A1 3.0.2**
- Communes  
see Housing, group dwellings
- Community care buildings  
see Communal residential buildings
- Community service buildings ..... **D1/AS1 1.1.3**  
see also Communal residential buildings
- Computer centres  
see Commercial buildings
- Concealed spaces ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.1, 6.18.10  
cavity barriers ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.1, 6.18.4 to 6.18.6  
ceiling space firecells ..... **C/AS1** 6.12.8  
ceiling space restrictions ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.7 to 6.18.10  
in walls and floors ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.4  
within firecells ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.2, 6.18.3, Figure 6.10  
see also **External Moisture, Internal Moisture**
- Concealed works ..... **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 b)
- Concrete ..... **B2/AS1 3.1**  
see also Design, concrete
- Condensation  
see **Internal Moisture**

	Construction moisture .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 10.0
	maximum acceptable moisture contents .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 10.2
	measuring moisture content .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 10.3
	concrete floors .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 10.3.2
	timber .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 10.3.1
	moisture in materials.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 10.1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Construction site barriers .....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 1.2.6
	<b>Construction and Demolition Hazards</b> .....	<b>F5</b>
	areas accessible to the public.....	<b>NZBC/F5.3.2</b>
	barriers .....	<b>NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4</b>
	demolition sites.....	<b>F5/AS1</b> 1.0
	entry of children .....	<b>NZBC/F5.2 (d), F5.3.3; F5/AS1</b> 1.0.2
	falling objects .....	<b>NZBC/F5.2 (a) (b), F5.3.1</b>
	lifting equipment.....	<b>NZBC/F5.3.4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Contaminants.....	<b>G14/VM1</b> 1.6, Table 1
	<i>see also</i> <b>Hazardous agents on site</b> , contaminants	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Control panel.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 2.2.2 b)
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Corridors .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
	<i>see also</i> <b>Access Routes</b>	
	Corrosives	<i>see</i> <b>Hazardous Substances and Processes</b> , Class 8
	Creep	<i>see</i> <b>Structure</b> , loads
	Cross connections	<i>see</i> Protection of water supplies
	Cyclic loads	<i>see</i> <b>Structure</b> , loads

**D**

Dampness

*see* **External Moisture, Internal Moisture**

Dams

*see* Ancillary buildings

Dangerous goods

*see also* **Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes**

Day care institution

*see* Early childhood centres, Communal non-residential buildings

Dead ends

*see* Escape routesAmend 12  
Oct 2011Decks and pergolas..... **E2/AS1** 7.0*see also* Membrane roofs and decks*see also* Enclosed Balustradesattachment to building structure ..... **E2/AS1** 7.2pergolas ..... **E2/AS1** 7.2.2, Figure 15slatted timber decks to walls ..... **E2/AS1** 7.2.1, Figure 15cantilevered decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.2.1.1, Figure 16level thresholds ..... **E2/AS1** 7.3, Figures 17A and 17Benclosed decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1Amend 12  
Oct 2011removable surfaces..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1.1, Figure 16timber removable surface ..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1.2ground floor level access ..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.2, Figure 17Bconcrete slab ..... **E2/AS1** Paragraph 7.3.2.1, Figure 17Btimber floor..... **E2/AS1** Paragraph 7.3.2.2, Figure 17BAmend 12  
Oct 2011thresholds for decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.1, Figure 14Amend 12  
Oct 2011enclosed decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.1.2slatted decks ..... **E2/AS1** 7.1.1, Figure 14

Deflections

*see* **Structure**

Demolition

*see* **Construction and Demolition Hazards**Dental surgeries..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)***see also* Commercial buildingsAmend 11  
Sep 2010

Design

aluminium..... **B1/VM1** 7.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0Amend 11  
Sep 2010concrete..... **B1/VM1** 3.0concrete masonry ..... **B1/VM1** 4.0, **B1/AS3** 1.3.3

drains

Amends  
11 and 12*see* Drainsearth building..... **B1/VM1** 8.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0

foundations

*see* Foundationsloadings ..... **B1/VM1** 2.0Amend 12  
Oct 2011earthquake..... **B1/VM1** 1.0, 2.0, **B1/AS1** 1.4, **B1/AS3** 1.9, Table 2limit state..... **B1/VM1** 2.0, 7.1Amend 11  
Sep 2010siteworks ..... **B1/VM1** 10.0steel..... **B1/VM1** 5.0Amend 11  
Sep 2010strength reduction factor ..... **B1/VM4** 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4structural design action standards ..... **B1/VM1** 2.0timber ..... **B1/VM1** 6.0, **B1/AS1** 3.0Amend 12  
Oct 2011

windows

*see* Windows

Design loads  
see **Structure**, loads

Detached dwellings  
see Housing

Differential movement  
see **Structure**, loads

Disabled persons  
see a Person with a disability

Discharge pipes ..... **G3/AS1** 1.1.5; **G13/AS1** 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.6, 5.1.1, 5.5, 5.7.3,  
Figures 6 and 11, Table 4

branch discharge pipes ..... **G13/AS1** Figure 7

diameters ..... **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, 4.3, 5.3, Table 6, **G13/AS2** 3.6, 4.2

fixture discharge pipes ..... **G13/AS1** Figures 7 and 8, Tables 2 and 4

gradient ..... **G13/AS1** 4.4, 5.4, **G13/AS2** 3.5, Table 2

waste pipes

combined waste pipes ..... **G13/AS1** Figure 5

developed lengths ..... **G13/AS1** Figures 5, 6 and 8

Discharge stacks ..... **G13/AS1** 4.2.2 a), 4.5.1 b), 4.7,  
5.3.1, 5.6, Figures 7 to 9, Tables 3, 4 and 6

see also Discharge pipes, Pipes

discharge stack vents ..... **G13/AS1** 4.7.1 b), 5.2.1 b), 5.3.1, 5.6.1, 5.6.3 b),  
Figures 7 and 8, Table 6, **G13/AS2** 4.1.5, Figure 5

Discharge units ..... **G13/AS1** Table 2, **G13/AS2** Table 2

Dishwashing machine ..... **G13/AS1** 3.3.2 a) e), Table 2

Domestic buildings  
see Housing

Doors  
see also Windows and doors

**NZBC/D1.3.4 (f), D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (n), D1.3.4 (f), D2.3.5 (c),  
F5.3.2 (d); C/AS1** 3.9.1, 3.11.6, 6.19.4; **D1/AS1** 7.0,  
Figure 27;

acceptable obstructions ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.6

accessible doors ..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.3 to 7.0.5

accessible escape routes ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.7

automatic sliding doors ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.7

closers and latching ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.1

degree and width of opening ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.4, 3.17.5

delayed action unlocking devices ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.11

direction of opening ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.3, 3.17.4

door swings ..... **C/AS1** 3.4.5 b), 3.13.2, 3.17.5 d) e)

fire doors **C/AS1** 3.3.1 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.11.9, 3.17.9, 3.17.13, 6.19.2 a),  
C7.1, Figures 3.29 to 3.31, Table 6.1;

frameless glass doors ..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.7

glazing ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.10, 5.8.11; **D1/AS1** 7.0.4, Figure 28

handles ..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.5

hold-open devices ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.1 b), 3.17.9, **F7/AS1** 1.3.6, 1.5.2

lift landing doors ..... **C/AS1** 6.16.5 b), 6.19.13, Table 6.1

lobby doors ..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.1

locking devices ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.2, 3.18.6

markings ..... **C/AS1** 6.19.6, 6.19.7

panic bolts ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.14

revolving doors, automatic doors and  
access control systems ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.7, 3.17.8,  
Figure 3.26; **D1/AS1** 7.0.6, Figure 29

signs ..... **C/AS1** 3.20.1

smoke control doors ..... **C/AS1** 3.17.9, 3.17.12, 6.9.11, 6.19.2 b), C7.1,  
Figures 3.27, 3.28 and 6.1, Table 6.1

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

## Doors (continued)

subdividing escape routes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.17
turnstiles .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 7.0.6
visibility .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 7.0.4
vision panels .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.17.6, 5.8.10
width .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 7.0.3
Downlights .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 9.4
Downpipes .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.4.2 a) b), 3.7.8, 4.0, 5.1.1
installation .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 4.3
materials .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 4.1, Table 4
sizing .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 4.2, Table 5
Drainage system .....	<b>G13/AS1</b> 5.1.2, 5.5.2, 5.7.3, 5.7.4 b), <b>G13/AS2</b> 1.0.2, 3.1.1, 3.3.2, 4.1.1, 5.10.1
Drains .....	<b>NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2,</b> <b>G13.3.3, G15.3.3; B1/VM1</b> 11.0, <b>B1/AS1</b> 6.0; <b>G13/AS1</b> 4.2.2 d), <b>G13/AS2</b> 1.0
access points .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, 3.7.8
access chambers .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 5.0.1, <b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12
inspection chambers .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11
inspection points .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b)
rodding points .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10
alignment .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5 <i>see also</i> Drain, layout
bedding and backfilling .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9, 3.9.2, Figure 13; <b>G13/AS2</b> Figure 7
alternative solutions .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.8
materials .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.5; <b>G13/AS2</b> Table 1
placing and compacting .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.6; <b>G13/AS2</b> 5.5
proximity to buildings .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.7, Figure 14;
trench slope .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.3
trench width .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.9.4
bends .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.1
bubble-up chamber system .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.4.2, Figures 6 and 7
connections .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.2.1, Figure 1
construction .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 5.2, Figure 7
diameter <i>see</i> Drains, sizing	
disused drains .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 5.10
downstream water systems .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.3
drain vent pipes .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> Figure 3, Table 3
drains under buildings .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7.6 to 3.7.8
gradient .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.3.1, 3.7.3 b); <b>G13/AS1</b> Table 5, <b>G13/AS2</b> 3.5, Table 2
minimum gradient .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.4, Table 2
installation .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 5.0, 5.5
joints .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.5, Table 3; <b>G13/AS2</b> 5.1
junctions .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.2
layout .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.3.1, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5
leakage tests .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 8.0, <b>E1/AS1</b> 3.8
high pressure air test .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 8.3
low pressure air test .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 8.2
water test .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 8.1
maintenance access <i>see</i> Maintenance access to drains	
materials .....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.1, Table 1; <b>G13/AS2</b> 2.0, Table 1
open water, upstream of site .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.2
pipe water, upstream of site .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.1
quantity .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.1.10
tailwater depth .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.1.6, 4.1.7
proximity to buildings .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 5.6, Figure 8
secondary flow .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.0, 4.1.11 <b>E1/AS1</b> 1.0.1 d)
downstream drainage .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.3
headwater depth .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.1.8, 4.1.9, Figures 5 to 7, 10 and 11

*Drains (continued)*

site – outfall protection .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 7.0
sizing.....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 3.0, <b>E1/AS1</b> 3.2, Figure 3; <b>G13/AS2</b> 3.6, Table 2
energy losses .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 5.0
hydraulic design of drains.....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 1.0.4, 3.2, Figures 6 and 7
air entrainment .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 3.2.4
headwater depth .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 3.2.2, Figure 5 a)
minimum size .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 3.1
minimum velocity .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 6.0
pipe size decrease.....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 5.0.2
soak pits .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 9.0, Figure 13
sumps.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.6.1, 3.6.2, Figures 8 and 9
surface water inlets.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.6
under buildings.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 3.7.6; <b>G13/AS2</b> 5.8, 5.9, Figure 13
upstream water systems .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 4.1, 4.2
ventilation .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
watertightness .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 6.1.1
Draught diverters .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.3.2
Drinking fountains.....	<b>G13/AS1</b> Table 2
<b>Durability</b> .....	<b>B2; B2/VM1</b> 1.0, <b>B2/AS1</b> 1.2, Figure 1
code compliance certificate.....	<b>NZBC/B2.3</b>
ease of access and replacement .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 1.2.1
evaluation .....	<b>B2/VM1</b> 1.0, <b>B2/AS1</b> 1.2, Figure 1
examples of requirement.....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 1.3.1, Table 1
generic materials .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 3.0
in service history .....	<b>B2/VM1</b> 1.1
laboratory testing .....	<b>B2/VM1</b> 1.2
similar materials .....	<b>B2/VM1</b> 1.3
intended life.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.1, B2.1, B2.3</b>
5 year durability .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> Table 1
15 year durability .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> Table 1
50 year durability .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> Table 1
maintenance.....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 2.0
normal.....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 2.1
scheduled .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 2.2
specified intended life.....	<b>NZBC/B2.3</b>
timber.....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 3.2
Dynamic loads	
see <b>Structure</b> , loads	

## E

	Early childhood centres.....	<b>NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.2, G7.2, G12.3.4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G5/AS1 1.0.3</b>
	<i>see also</i> Communal non-residential buildings	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Earth buildings .....	<b>B2/AS1 3.4, E2/AS2 1.0</b>
	Earth pressure	<i>see</i> <b>Structure</b> , loads
	Earth retaining structures .....	<b>B1/VM4 2.0.3</b>
	Earthquakes	<i>see</i> <b>Structure</b> , loads
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Ease of access and replacement.....	<b>B2/AS1 1.2.1</b>
	Effluents.....	<b>B1/VM4 A1.2.1 f)</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	EIFS.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9</b>
	battens .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.5</b>
	coating.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.6</b>
	decorative mouldings .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.6.4</b>
	finish coats .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.6.3</b>
	reinforcing.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.6.1</b>
	reinforcing base coat.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.6.2</b>
	EIFS/floor slab junction.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.7, Figure 125</b>
	general.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.2</b>
	installation .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.4, Table 23</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	fixing blocks.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.4.4</b>
	fixings .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.4.1, Table 24</b>
	joints .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.4.2</b>
	movement control joints .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.4.3, Figure 124</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	limitations.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.1</b>
	materials.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.3</b>
	fibreglass reinforcing mesh.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.3.2</b>
	polystyrene sheet.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.3.1</b>
	parapets and enclosed balustrades .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.10</b>
	EIFS topped enclosed balustrades .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figure 129</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	flush-finished balustrade top.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.10.1, Figures 129 and 130</b>
	metal cappings .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.10.2, Figures 12, 13 and 130</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	pipes and service penetrations.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.8, Figure 126</b>
	windows and doors.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.9.9, Figures 17c, 127 and 128</b>
	Electrical codes of practice.....	<b>G9/VM1 1.0.1, G9/AS1 1.0.1</b>
	<b>Electricity</b> .....	<b>G9</b>
	electrical installations.....	<b>NZBC/G9.1, G9.2, G9.3.1 to G9.3.3; G9/VM1 1.0</b>
	domestic cooking and refrigeration .....	<b>G3/AS1 1.4.1</b>
	laundries .....	<b>G2/AS1 1.1.2</b>
	electromechanical stress .....	<b>NZBC/G9.3.1 (d)</b>
	essential services.....	<b>NZBC/G9.3.2</b>
	external supply system .....	<b>NZBC/G9.3.3</b>
	a person with a disability.....	<b>NZBC/G9.3.4</b>
	light switches .....	<b>G9/AS1 2.0.1 a) b)</b>
	socket outlets .....	<b>G9/AS1 2.0.1 c)</b>
	temperature.....	<b>NZBC/G9.3.1 (c) (d)</b>
	Emergency lighting	<i>see</i> <b>Lighting for Emergency</b>

Amend 12 Oct 2011	Enclosed balustrades.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 7.4, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, Figures 101 and 102, Table 3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	balustrade-to-deck floor junction.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 7.4.3, Figures 18 and 62
	balustrade-to-wall junctions.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 7.4.2, Figures 11-12
	deck drainage.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 7.4.1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	EIFS-topped.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.9.10, Figure 129
	flush-finished topped balustrades.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
	metal cappings.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 7.4.4, Table 7, Figure 5
Amend 12 Oct 2011	stanchions.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 7.4.5, Figure 19
	Enclosing rectangles.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.6, 7.5, 7.6
	building on sloping sites and buildings of irregular height.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.5.9, 7.5.10, Figure 7.7
	exceptions for SH, SR and SA buildings.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.5.7, 7.5.8, Figure 7.7
	Method 2.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.4 a), 7.3.6 to 7.3.8, 7.3.12, 7.5, Figures 7.5 to 7.7, Table 7.2
	Method 3.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.4 b), 7.3.8, 7.3.12, 7.6, Figure 7.8
	Method 4.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.4 c), 7.3.9, 7.7, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
	Energy cut-offs.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.4.1 c), 6.5.2
	<b>Energy Efficiency</b> .....	<b>H1; E3/AS1</b> 1.1.5;
	building performance index (BPI).....	<b>NZBC/H1.3.2; H1/VM1</b> 1.2
	heat gain.....	<b>NZBC/H1.3.3 (d) (f); H1/AS1</b> 4.0
	heat loss.....	<b>NZBC/H1.3.4</b>
	heating.....	<b>NZBC/H1.3.2</b>
	indoor temperature and humidity.....	<b>NZBC/H1.2 (a), H1.3.1</b>
	Energy efficiency provisions	
	airflow control.....	<b>H1/AS1</b> 3.0
	artificial lighting.....	<b>H1/VM1</b> 1.3.1, <b>H1/AS1</b> 1.0.4, 6.1.1
	building performance index.....	<b>H1/VM1</b> 1.2, 1.2.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	hot water systems.....	<b>H1/AS1</b> 5.0.1
	internal moisture.....	<b>H1/VM1</b> 1.2.1, <b>H1/AS1</b> 2.1.4
	solar heat gain.....	<b>H1/AS1</b> 4.0
	Entrances	
	principal.....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.1.1
	Environment	
	see <b>Interior Environment</b>	
	Escalators	
	see <b>Mechanical Installations for Access</b>	
	Escape height.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 2.2.9 a), 3.3.4, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.18.1, 4.5.10 b), 5.3.3 c), 7.10.3 Comment 7.9.10, Figure 3.20, Table 4.1
	Escape routes.....	<b>NZBC/F6.2, F6.3.2, F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1</b> 3.1 to 3.4, 3.6.1, 3.7.1, 3.9.12 to 3.9.14, 3.11.4, 3.17.3, 3.17.5, 4.5.7, Figures 3.1 to 3.5, Tables 3.1 and 3.2; <b>D1/AS1</b> 1.1.5; <b>F8/AS1</b> 3.0
	see also <b>Means of Escape</b>	
	accessible.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.7, 3.17.5 a)
	doors subdividing escape routes.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.17
	exitways.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 a), 3.11, 3.12, 6.9.1, 6.16.7, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.3 and 3.20, Tables 2.1, 6.1 to 6.3
	external exitways.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.16.4, 5.6.3 c), 7.9.1, 7.9.3
	lighting.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.19.1
	lighting for emergency	
	see Fire safety precautions	
	pressurisation	
	see Fire safety precautions	



*Escape routes; exitways (continued)*

split level exitways .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
ventilation of enclosed exitways .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
external .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.14
handrails .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c)
height and width of escape routes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3
height .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.1
width .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 to 3.3.5, 3.9.4 to 3.9.6, 3.9.12 e), 3.17.5, Figures 3.3, 3.4 and 3.6, Tables 3.2 and 3.4
length of escape routes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4, 3.5, 3.11.7, 6.13.1, Figures 3.7, 3.9 and 3.10, Table 3.3
measurement of travel distance .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> Appendix D
number of escape routes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1
obstructions .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.6, 3.4.2 c), 3.17.5 a) e), 3.18.3
access control systems .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.17.7
chains .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.6
crowd control barriers .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.6
sliding bars .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.6
turnstiles .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.6
open paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 2.2.8, 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.1.5, 3.3.2 f), 3.3.7, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.8, 3.9, 3.17.3 a), 3.17.5 a), A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.9, 3.12 and 3.16, Table 3.3
dead end open paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 1.3.4 Step 2, 3.3.2 b), 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.10, 3.14.4, Table 3.3
increases in open path lengths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.5
intermediate floors .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 f), 3.4.1 a), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, Figure 3.9
length .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 1.3.4 Step 2, 2.2.8, 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.4, 3.4.6 to 3.4.8, 3.5, 3.15.1, Figures 3.7 and 3.9, Table 3.3
number of open paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.8.1
ramps .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.1.4, 3.9.2, 3.14.7
separation of open paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.8.3, Figure 3.12
size of open paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.8.1
sloping floors and ceilings .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.8 a)
special cases .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9
aisles .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.4 to 3.9.9, Figure 3.15
exception for education buildings .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.8.4
fixed seating .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.3, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Table 3.4
ladders .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.10.2
long corridors .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.13, Figure 6.5
loose seating .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.10, 3.9.11
separate tenancies .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.1
subdivision .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.13.1 a)
unenclosed stairs .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.14
protected paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.1.2, 3.7.1 a), 3.9.12, 3.9.13, 3.11.1, 3.11.2, 3.15.3 b), 3.16.3, 6.9.1, 6.9.6 a), 6.10.4 a), 6.11.3 b), Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.8, 3.11, 3.19, 3.28 and 3.30, Tables 2.1 and 6.1
floor area .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.3, 3.4.5
length .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.4, 6.13.1 a), Table 3.3
subdivision .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.13.1 a)
safe paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.1.2, 3.4.1 b), 3.7.1, 3.9.14, 3.11.4 to 3.11.6, 3.11.9, 3.14.1, 3.15.3 b), 3.15.6, 3.15.8 a), 3.16.1, 3.16.6, 3.16.8, 3.16.9, 6.9.2 to 6.9.4, 6.10.4 a), 6.22.2 d), 7.2.1 b), 7.7.1, A2.1.1 Type 13 Type 19, Figures 3.1, 3.8, 3.16, 3.19, 3.21, 3.22, 3.24, 3.29 to 3.31 and 5.1, Tables 2.1, 6.1 and 7.4
glazing .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 5.8, Figure 5.1
horizontal safe paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.11.6 a), 3.11.7, 3.11.8, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.8
length restrictions .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.11.7, 3.15.5 c)
permitted activities .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.12.2
subdivision .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.13.1 a)
vertical safe paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.11.6 b), 3.11.7, 3.12.3, 3.13, 3.16.3, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.12 a), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.7, 6.9.11, A2.1.1 Type 14, Figure 6.1

Amend 11  
Sep 2010 |

*Escape routes (continued)*

	signs .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.20
	single escape routes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15
	active purpose groups .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.3, 3.15.4
	basements .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.2, Figure 3.19
	bridges .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.7, Figure 3.23
	external balconies .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.7, Figure 3.22
	external stairways .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.7
	intermediate floors .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.22.2 c)
	internal stairs .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.6, Figure 3.21
	sleeping purpose groups .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.5, Figure 3.21
	split level exitways .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
	stairs .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.6, 3.15.7, Figures 3.21 to 3.23
	surface finishes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 6.2
	Equipotential bonding .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 9.0
	earth bonding conductors .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 9.3
	installation of conductors .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 9.2
	metallic sanitary fixtures .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 9.2.2, Figure 20
	metallic water supply pipes .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 9.2.1, Figure 19
	Escape through adjacent firecell .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.12, Figure 3.16
	Escape through adjoining building .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.6, Figure 3.11
	Evacuation time .....	<b>NZBC/F6.3.1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Exitways .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.5 c), 1.5.2, <b>F8/AS1</b> 3.1.1, 3.2.3
	pressurisation .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.3.7
	Explosion	
	see <b>Structure</b> , loads, and <b>Hazardous Substances and Processes</b>	
	Explosives	
	see also <b>Hazardous Substances and Processes</b> , Class 1 Explosives	
	<b>External Moisture</b> .....	<b>E2</b>
	concealed spaces .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.5</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	concrete and concrete masonry buildings .....	<b>E2/AS3</b> 1.0
	elements in contact with the ground .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.3</b>
	external walls .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.2</b>
	moisture present at completion of construction .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.6</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	qualifications .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.5, 8.2.2, 8.3.2, 8.4.2, 8.5.2, 9.2.3, 9.3.4.1, 9.4.3, 9.5.3, 9.6.2, 9.7.2.1, 9.8.3, 9.9.2
	roofs .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.1, E2.3.2</b>
	scope .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.2, <b>E2/AS1</b> 1.0
	construction excluded .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.2
	acoustics .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.2.3
	commercial and industrial roofing .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 3.0
	outbuildings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.2.1
	skillion roofs .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 3.0
	spread of flame .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.2.2
	attached garages .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.1
	construction included .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.1
	provisions for snow .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.3
	qualifications .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.5
	specific design .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 1.4
	windows and doors .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.1
	snow .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.1</b>
	suspended floors .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.4</b>

**External Moisture** *(continued)*

	Verification Method.....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, Appendix 1
	commercial and industrial roofing.....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 3.0
	general.....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.1
Amend 12	pitched roofing systems.....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 2.0
Oct 2011	pro-forma for test details .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.6, Appendix 1
	scope .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.2
	skillion roofs.....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4
	specimen details .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.3
	test procedure .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4
	preconditioning .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4.1
	Series 1 Cyclic Pressure Water Penetration .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4.3
	Series 1 Static Pressure Water Penetration .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4.2
	Series 2 'Water Management Testing' .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4.4
Amend 12	Series 3 'Wetwall Test' .....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.4.5
Oct 2011	transition period.....	<b>E2/VM1</b> 1.5
	External walls.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.14.3, 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 6.12.7, 7.1.1, 7.3, 7.4.1, 7.5 to 7.7, 7.8.7, 7.9.7, 7.9.10, 7.9.11, 7.10, 7.11.2, Figures 6.11, 6.12, 7.1, 7.3 and 7.11, Table 7.5
	cladding .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.9.18, 7.11.2, 7.11.3, C9.1, Table 7.5
	fire resistance ratings.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 7.3.10, 7.4.3, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.9, 7.9.13, 7.10
	firecell separation.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3, 7.8 to 7.10, Figures 7.1 to 7.12, Tables 7.1 to 7.4
	glazing.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.3 c), 7.3.5 to 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
	return walls.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.3 e), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
	surface finishes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.1.2 c), 7.11.2 to 7.11.3
	wing walls.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.3.3 d), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Tables 7.3 and 7.4

**F**

F rating

*see* Fire resistance ratings

Factories

*see* Industrial buildings

Falsework

*see* **Structure**

Farm buildings

*see* Buildings, farm buildings

Fascias

*see* Gutters, barges and fascias

FHC

*see* Fire hazard category

FI

*see* Flammability indexFibre cement sheet ..... **E2/AS1** 9.3.6.2, 9.7decorative attachments ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.8flush-finished systems ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.4, Figures 111-114control joints ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.4.1, Table 19, Figure 111finishes ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.4.2jointed systems ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.3, Figures 104A-108paint finish ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.3.1limitations ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.1material and installation ..... **E2/AS3** 9.7.2installation ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.2 1, Tables 23 and 24parapets and enclosed balustrades ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.7flush-finished topped balustrades ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.7.1, Figure 117soffit details ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.5, Figures 8A and 114windows and doors ..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.6, Figures 115 and 116Amend 12  
Oct 2011Fibre cement weatherboards ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5installation ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.3, Table 23external corners ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.3, Figure 88fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.1, Table 24internal corners ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.4, Figure 89laps and joints ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.2, Figure 87limitations ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.1material performance ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.2parapets and enclosed balustrades ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.5protective coating ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.6windows and doors ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.4windows – direct fixed ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.4.1, Figures 17D and 90windows – on cavity ..... **E2/AS1** 9.5.4.2, Figures 17C and 91Amend 12  
Oct 2011Amend 12  
Oct 2011Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Filters

*see* StrainersFinal exits ..... **C/AS1** 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.14.5, 3.16.4, 3.17.1 c), 3.18.1, 6.20.18 a), Figures 3.1, 3.2, 3.12, 3.19, 3.24 and 3.31, Table 6.1; **F8/AS1** 3.1.1 a) b), 3.2.3 a)

- Fire alarm systems  
see Fire safety precautions
- Fire engineering design ..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.7, 1.4.1
- Fire fighting facilities ..... **C/AS1** 8.2
- Fire hazard categories (FHC) ..... **C/AS1** 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.2.1, 3.12.2 d), 3.12.3 c), 3.15.2 b),  
3.15.3 a), 4.2.3, 5.4.1 f) j), 6.6.7, 6.20.7, 6.20.15 a),  
6.21.5 a), 6.22.1, 7.1.3, 7.3.2 b), 7.5.2, 7.5.3 Step 4,  
7.7.5 Step 5, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, 7.8.9 c) d), 7.10.5 a),  
Figures 3.19, 3.20, 1 and 7.10 Note 3,  
Tables 2.1, 5.1, 7.1 to 7.4
- category 4 buildings ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, Table 2.1
- Fire load energy density (FLED) ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.1 comments, 2.2.10, Table 5
- Fire resistance ratings (FRR) ..... **C/AS1** 1.3.2 Step 8, 1.3.4 Steps 4 and 6,  
1.3.5 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.14.6 c), 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 5.1, 5.2,  
5.9.5 a) b), 5.9.6, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6.1, 6.6.2, 6.6.5 to 6.6.7,  
6.7.1, 6.7.2, 6.7.5, 6.7.6, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1,  
6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.14, 6.15,  
6.16.2, 6.17.2, 6.18.8, 6.19.14, 7.2.1, 7.4.3, 7.8.1 a),  
7.8.2 to 7.8.6, 7.8.10 b) c), 7.9.3, 7.9.4, 7.9.8 b),  
7.9.13, 7.10, C7.1.1, Figure 7.10, Table 6.1
- application of F and S ratings ..... **C/AS1** 5.3
- applying FRRs to building elements ..... **C/AS1** 5.7
- concessions for multiple purpose groups ..... **C/AS1** 5.6.7, 5.6.8
- determining F and S ratings ..... **C/AS1** 5.4, 5.5
- determining the FRR ..... **C/AS1** 5.6
- fire resistance tests ..... **C/AS1** 5.9.6, C7.1.1
- firecell rating (F) ..... **C/AS1** 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 4.4.1 Step 5, 4.5.7, 4.5.14, 5.2.2,  
5.3.1, 5.4, 5.5.1, 5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 6.15.1, 6.16.2,  
6.20.15, 7.2.1 a), 7.10.2, 7.10.3, Table 4.1
- firecells rated F0 ..... **C/AS1** 6.2
- floors ..... **C/AS1** 3.14.6 c), 4.3.2, 5.6.4 d), 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.14, 6.15, 7.8.6
- insulation rating ..... **C/AS1** 5.1.1 c), 5.6.4 to 5.6.6,  
5.8.10, 6.19.13, 7.8.1 a), Table 6.1 Notes
- integrity rating ..... **C/AS1** 5.1.1 b), 5.6.6, 5.8.2, 7.4.3
- intermediate floors ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.16, 6.14.3
- minimum FRRs ..... **C/AS1** 5.7.9
- open sided buildings ..... **C/AS1** 7.8.10 b) c), Figure 7.10
- reductions for sprinklered firecells ..... **C/AS1** 5.6.6
- roofs ..... **C/AS1** 7.8.1, 7.9.3, 7.9.8 b), Figures 7.1 and 7.11
- small buildings ..... **C/AS1** 7.10.5
- stability rating ..... **C/AS1** 5.1.1 a), 5.6.6, 5.9.4, 5.9.5
- structural fire endurance rating (S) ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.3,  
5.2.2, 5.3.2, 5.4, 5.5.2, 5.5.3,  
5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 5.6.11, 6.10.5, 7.2.1,  
7.4.3, 7.8.1 a), 7.8.5, 7.8.6, 7.10.2,  
7.10.5, 7.10.8, Table 5.1
- Fire resisting closures ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.9, 6.19, C7.1.1, C8.1.1, Table 6.1
- access panels ..... **C/AS1** 6.19.12
- fire curtains ..... **C/AS1** 6.19.9, 6.19.10
- fire dampers ..... **C/AS1** 6.3.2 f), 6.16.4 d), 6.19.14
- fire doors  
see Doors
- fire shutters ..... **C/AS1** 6.19.15 to 6.19.17
- lift landing doors  
see Doors
- smoke control doors  
see Doors

## Fire safety

see **Means of Escape, Outbreak of Fire, Spread of Fire, Structural Stability during Fire**

	Fire safety precautions (FSP) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 1.2.3, 1.3.2 Step 6, 2.3.1, 3.1.5, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.3.1, 4.4.1, 4.5, 5.6.8, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, Appendix A, Table 4.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	automatic fire alarm system with modified smoke detection and manual call points (Type 5) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.5.4, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, Table 4.1
	domestic (Type 1).....	<b>C/AS1</b> A2.1.1
	emergency electrical power supply (Type 17).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.23.1 d), 6.23.3, 6.23.4, A2.1
	emergency lighting (Type 16) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.19.2, 6.23.3 c), 6.23.4, A2.1
	emergency lighting in exitways .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.5.2
	fire alarm systems	
	activation of system .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 2.1.1
	automatic.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.3, 1.2.3 to 1.2.7
Amend 11 Sep 2010	heat detectors .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.3, 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
	high sensitivity smoke detection .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.7
	installation and maintenance.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
	manual (Type 2) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1; <b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
	means of communication with the Fire Service see Alerting the Fire Service	
	modified smoke detection .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.5 to 1.2.7
	requirements .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 2.1
	smoke detectors.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
	substitution of smoke detectors by heat detectors.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.3.5
	fire hose reels (Type 14).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 8.2.2, A2.1
	fire hydrant systems (Type 18) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 8.2.1, A2.1
	Fire Service lift controls (Type 15).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 8.2.5, A2.1; <b>F7/AS1</b> 1.5.2
	fire sprinklers (Type 6) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.12 f), 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 4.1.1 a), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 5.6.13, 6.3.2 a) d), 6.6.8, 6.16.7, 6.18.10, 6.19.9, A2.1, Appendix D, Figure 7.2
	concessions for sprinklers .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 c), 3.4.8 d), 3.5.2, 3.14.3, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.16.3 b), 4.2.5, 5.5.3, 5.6.6, 5.6.7 b), 5.6.8, 5.8.7, 5.8.8, 6.3.1, 6.5.1, 6.7.2, 6.9.6 d), 6.9.11, 6.10.5, 6.13.1, 6.20.5, 6.20.10, 6.20.15 a), 6.22.3 a), 7.2.2, 7.3.12, 7.7.6, 7.9.3, 7.9.10, 8.1.1 e), Tables 4.1 Note 5, 6.2
	residential .....	<b>C/AS1</b> D3.1
	with smoke detectors (Type 7) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.12.2 b), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), A2.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	fire sprinkler systems	
	automatic.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 1.3.2, 1.3.4
	with smoke detectors .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.2.9
	fire systems centre (Type 20).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 8.2.3, 8.2.4, A2.1
	heat detectors (Type 3).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.5.3, 3.5.5, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.10.4 c), 6.11.3 b), A2.1
	hold-open devices.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.3.6, 1.5.2
	manual (Type 2).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1
	mechanical smoke extract .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.3.8, 1.5.2
	mechanical smoke extract (Type 11) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 c), 6.22.8 c), 6.22.11, 6.22.12, 6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.6
	modified smoke/heat detection (Type 5) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.5.4, A2.1
	natural smoke venting.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.3.8, 1.5.2
	natural smoke venting (Type 10).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 b), 6.22.8 b) c), 6.22.10, 6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.5
	pressurisation of safe paths (Type 13).....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.7.1 b), 3.11.6 b), 6.9.6, 6.9.11, 6.13.1, 6.19.4 c), 6.21.2, 6.23.1 b), A2.1, B1.1.1, Table 6.1 Note 2; <b>F7/AS1</b> 1.3.7, 1.5.2
	refuge areas (Type 19) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.13, A2.1, Figure 3.17

*Fire safety precautions (FSP) (continued)*

- smoke control in air-handling systems (Type 9) ..... **C/AS1** 6.23.2, A2.1; **F7/AS1** 1.5.2, 1.5.3
- smoke detectors ..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
- smoke detectors (Type 4) ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.4, 3.5.5, 3.12.2 b), 3.17.10, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), 6.22.14, 6.23.1, A2.1, B1.1.1
- voice communication system (Type 8) ..... **C/AS1** 3.16.3 d), 8.2.6, A2.1
- Fire separations ..... **C/AS1** 1.3.5 b), 3.11.9, 4.1.1 a), 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 d) e), 5.6.3, 5.6.4 a), 5.6.5 c), 5.6.7, 5.7.2, 5.7.4, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6, 6.7, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1, 6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.11.2, 6.12, 6.14.1, 6.14.4, 6.15.1 a), 6.17, 6.18.4, 6.18.7 to 6.18.10, 7.2.1, 7.2.2, Table 6.1
- junctions ..... **C/AS1** 6.12.4 to 6.12.7, 6.12.9, 6.18.4, Figure 6.4
- protected shafts ..... **C/AS1** 6.16, Figure 6.8
- Fire Service ..... **C/AS1** 4.2.6 c), 5.9.3 f), 6.21.2, 6.22.12 b), Part 8, A2.1.1 Type 15 and Type 20; **F7/AS1** 1.2.2, 2.1.2 a), 2.2
- see also* Alerting the Fire Service
- installation and maintenance ..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
- manual ..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
- means of communication with ..... **C/AS1** A1.3.1, A2.1.1 Type 2 and Type 7 requirements ..... **F7/AS1** 2.1
- activation of system ..... **F7/AS1** 2.1.1
- smoke detectors ..... **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
- vehicular access ..... **C/AS1** 8.1.1, 8.1.2
- Fire shutters  
*see* Fire resisting closures
- Fire spread
  - horizontal ..... **C/AS1** 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 b), 7.3, 7.8
  - vertical ..... **C/AS1** 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 a), 7.9
  - between different levels of the same building ..... **C/AS1** 7.9.10 to 7.9.15
  - external thermal insulation ..... **C/AS1** 7.9.18, 7.9.19, Figure 7.12
  - from an adjacent lower roof ..... **C/AS1** 7.9.6 to 7.9.9, Figure 7.11
  - roof car parking and storage ..... **C/AS1** 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
- Amend 11  
Sep 2010 | Fire stopping ..... **C/AS1** 6.12.5, 6.12.7 a), 6.12.9, 6.17, 6.18.1, 6.18.4, C6.1.1, C6.1.2, Figures 6.4, 6.9 and 6.11
- cavity barriers ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.4, 6.18.6, Figure 6.12
- curtain walls ..... **C/AS1** 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
- external thermal insulation ..... **C/AS1** 7.9.18, Figure 7.12
- hollow construction ..... **C/AS1** 6.17.5, Figure 6.12
- protected shafts ..... **C/AS1** 3.12.3 e), 6.16.3, 6.16.4 e), Figure 6.8
- service outlets ..... **C/AS1** 6.17.6, Figure 6.9
- Firecell rating (F)  
*see* Fire resistance ratings
- Amend 11  
Sep 2010 | Firecells ..... **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.2.7, 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
- basements ..... **C/AS1** 3.7, 4.5.15, 6.14.4
- buildings remaining occupied during fire ..... **C/AS1** 5.6.9, 5.6.10
- car parking ..... **C/AS1** 6.10.3 to 6.10.6
- ceiling space firecells ..... **C/AS1** 6.12.8
- concealed spaces ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.2, 6.18.3
- concessions for multiple purpose groups ..... **C/AS1** 5.6.7, 5.6.8
- construction ..... **C/AS1** 6.12
- fire hazard category 4 ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13
- fire safety precautions  
*see* Fire safety precautions
- firecells rated F0 ..... **C/AS1** 6.2
- floor area limits ..... **C/AS1** 4.2.3 to 4.2.5
- group sleeping areas ..... **C/AS1** 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.5
- intermediate floors ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.16 to 4.5.18, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3 to 6.21.6, Figure 6.6, Tables 6.5 and 6.6

Firecells (continued)

limited area atriums ..... **C/AS1** 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6  
 plant, boiler and incinerator rooms ..... **C/AS1** 6.11.3, 6.11.4  
 protected shafts ..... **C/AS1** 6.16  
 provision of firecells ..... **C/AS1** 4.2  
 roofs ..... **C/AS1** 7.8.1 to 7.8.5, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9  
 solid waste storage ..... **C/AS1** 6.10.2  
 suites ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.9, 3.15.5, 6.6.5, 6.7.6, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, A2.1.1 Type 5  
 top floor firecells ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.14

Fireplace ..... **C/AS1** 9.1 to 9.3, Figures 9.1 and 9.3, Table 9.1

Fire Safety ..... **C/AS1, C/VM1**

Fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 4.4, 8.1.4, 8.2.4, 8.3.7, 8.4.8, 8.4.8.1, 8.4.9, 8.4.9.1, 9.4.3.1, 9.4.4.3, 9.4.5.2, 9.5.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.7.3.1, 9.8.3.1, 9.9.4.1, Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40

Fixtures

sanitary fixtures  
 see **Personal Hygiene**

Amend 11 | Flame barriers ..... **C/AS1** 3.14.6 b) c), 6.18.5 c), 6.20.12 a), 6.20.13, 6.20.14 b),  
 Sep 2010 | C9.1, Table 6.3

Flammability index (FI) ..... **C/AS1** C3.1, Table 6.2

Flammable liquids

see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 3 flammable liquids

Flammable solids

see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 4 flammable solids

Amend 12 | Flashings ..... **E2/AS1** 4.0, 8.2.4, 8.2.6, 8.3.8, 8.4.11, 8.4.11.1, 8.4.12, 9.2.4, 9.6.7,  
 Oct 2011 | Tables 20-22, Figures 5 and 6

apron flashings ..... **E2/AS1** 5.1, 8.4.12 b), Figures 7, 35 and 44

Amend 12 | fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 4.4, Tables 20-22  
 Oct 2011 |

head flashings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7

jamb flashings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6

Amend 12 | materials ..... **E2/AS1** 4.1, 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.3, 9.8.5, Tables 20-22  
 Oct 2011 |

aluminium ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.2

aluminium-zinc coated steel ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.4

bituminous ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.10

butyl rubber ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.9

copper ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.6

EPDM ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.9

flexible flashing tape ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.11

galvanised steel ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.3

lead sheet ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.7

stainless steel ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.5

uPVC ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.1

zinc sheet ..... **E2/AS1** 4.3.8

Amend 12 | overlaps and upstands ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6, Table 7  
 Oct 2011 |

overlap with roof claddings ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1

apron flashing cover over metal roofing ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.1

barges ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.5, Figure 47, Table 7

change in metal roof pitches ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.3, Figure 44, Table 7

inter-storey junctions ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.7, Figure 70, Table 7

parallel flashing ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.1, Figures 47 and 48

ridges and hips ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.2, Figure 46, Table 7

roof- or deck-to-wall junctions ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.4, Figure 7, Table 7

transverse flashing ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.1, Figure 7, Table 7

Amend 12 | window and door heads ..... **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.6, Figures 71 and 81, Table 7  
 Oct 2011 |

requirements ..... **E2/AS1** 4.5

edge treatments ..... **E2/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 5

Amend 12 | metal flashing joints ..... **E2/AS1** 4.5.2, Figure 6  
 Oct 2011 |



- Flats  
see Housing, multi-unit dwelling
- FLED  
see Fire load energy density
- Flooding  
flood risk assessment ..... **E1/VM1** 3.2.2  
history of ..... **E1/AS1** 1.0.1  
protection from ..... **E1/VM1** 3.2.2
- Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Floors ..... **NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), D1.3.3 (e), D1.3.4 (c), E2.3.3, E2.3.4, G6.3.1, G6.3.2;**  
**F7/AS1** 1.1.2; **G3/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3,  
2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6  
basement floors ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.2 i), 3.15.2, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19  
concealed spaces ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.4, 6.18.5 a), 6.18.10
- Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | fire resistance ratings ..... **C/AS1** 3.14.6 c), 4.1.1 a), 4.3.2, 4.5.7, 5.3.1, 5.6.4 d),  
5.6.8, 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.12.2, 6.14.2 to 6.14.4, 6.15.1  
floor projections ..... **C/AS1** 7.8.6, 7.9.13  
flooring materials ..... **C/AS1** 6.20.8, 6.20.14  
intermediate floors ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.2 f), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, 4.5.16 to 4.5.18,  
5.6.4 d), 5.6.5 b), 6.10.3, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3, 6.22,  
A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, B4.1.1, Figures 3.9 and 6.6,  
Tables 6.4 to 6.6  
limited area intermediate floors ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.17, 6.21.4 a), 6.21.5, 6.21.6  
lower floors ..... **C/AS1** 3.16.9, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.7.7, 6.9.3, Figure 3.5  
more than one purpose group on a floor ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.1 to 4.5.6, 5.6.11  
other floors in a building ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.8 to 4.5.11  
same purpose group on different floors ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.13  
sloping floors and ceilings ..... **C/AS1** 3.4.8 a)  
subfloor spaces ..... **C/AS1** 6.15.1, 6.18.5 a), Figure 6.7  
top floor firecells ..... **C/AS1** 4.5.14  
upper floors ..... **C/AS1** 3.15.3 b), 3.16.3 a), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 6.7.7,  
6.8.2, 6.8.6, 7.5.7, Figure 3.5  
wooden floors ..... **C/AS1** 6.12.6, 6.20.14  
floor/ceiling assemblies ..... **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 3  
floor/wall junctions ..... **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 5  
minimum floor level ..... **E1/AS1** 2.0, Figures 1 and 2  
moisture ..... **NZBC/E2.3.4**  
slip resistant ..... **NZBC/D1.3.3 (d); G15/AS1** 3.0.2
- Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Floor outlets ..... **G13/AS1** 3.4  
Floor wastes ..... **E3/AS1** 2.0.1, 2.2, Figure 4

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Flues..... **NZBC/G11.3.3; G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4; G11/AS1 5.0**  
 fire damper ..... **G11/AS1 5.3**  
 gas burning appliances..... **C/AS1 9.2**  
 locations on dwellings..... **G4/AS1 2.4**  
 materials..... **G11/AS1 5.1**  
 oil fired appliances..... **C/AS1 9.3**  
 safety devices ..... **G11/AS1 5.2**  
 solid fuel appliances..... **C/AS1 9.1**

Foamed plastics building materials ..... **C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.5 6.20.11 to 6.20.13, 7.9.18,**  
 Figure 7.12, Table 6.3

**Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination ..... G3**  
 cooking..... **NZBC/G3.3.1 (c); G3/AS1 1.2.1, 1.4.1**  
 energy supply..... **NZBC/G3.3.3**  
 location..... **NZBC/G3.3.4**  
 people with disabilities ..... **NZBC/G3.3.5**  
 preparation ..... **NZBC/G3.3.1 (b) (d), G3.3.2**  
 prevention of contamination ..... **NZBC/G3.3.6**  
 rinsing..... **G3/AS1 1.1.1**  
 storage ..... **NZBC/G3.3.1 (a); G3/AS1 1.3.1**  
     refrigeration ..... **G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.4.1**  
     ventilation ..... **G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4**  
 surfaces..... **G3/AS1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, Figure 1**  
 utensil washing ..... **NZBC/G3.3.1 (b), G3.3.2**

**Foul Water ..... G13**  
*see also* Discharge pipes, Drains, Sanitary appliances, Sanitary fixtures, Vent pipes,  
 Water seals, Water traps  
 gravity flow..... **NZBC/G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2 (a)**  
 odours ..... **NZBC/G13.1 (b), G13.3.1 (c), G13.3.2 (e); G13/AS1 3.1.1**  
 offensive matter..... **NZBC/G13.1 (b)**  
 on-site disposal systems ..... **NZBC/G13.3.4**  
     *see also* **Industrial Liquid Waste**  
 outfalls..... **NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.2**  
 personal hygiene ..... **NZBC/G13.1 (a)**  
 plumbing system..... **NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1**  
 sewer..... **NZBC/G13.3.3, G13.3.4, G15.3.3**  
 three storey buildings..... **G13/AS1 Figure 7**

Amend 11 | Foundations ..... **B1/VM4**  
 Sep 2010 | *see also* Chimneys, foundations  
 design parameters  
     continuous vibration ..... **B1/VM4 1.0.6**  
     depth..... **B1/VM4 2.0.4**  
     ground stability..... **B1/VM4 1.0.4**  
         long-term loading ..... **B1/VM4 2.0.6**  
         short-term loading..... **B1/VM4 2.0.6**  
 serviceability deformations..... **B1/VM4 1.0.3, Appendix B**  
 pile foundations..... **B1/VM4 4.0**  
     belled piles..... **B1/VM4 4.0.3 b), 5.1.2**  
     bulbed piles ..... **B1/VM4 4.0.3 c)**  
     concrete piles  
         cast-in-situ ..... **B1/VM4 3.4.4**  
         precast..... **B1/VM4 3.4.4, 5.1.1**  
     downdrag..... **B1/VM4 4.5**  
     nominal width ..... **B1/VM4 4.0.3, 4.2.2, 4.6.1**  
     notation..... **B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2**  
     pile driving ..... **B1/VM4 5.1.1**  
     pile driving formula..... **B1/VM4 4.0.1**  
     pile groups  
         design pile lateral strength..... **B1/VM4 4.0.4**  
         design pile vertical strength..... **B1/VM4 4.0.4**  
         ultimate lateral strength..... **B1/VM4 4.6.1, Table 3**  
         ultimate vertical strength ..... **B1/VM4 4.4.1**

Amend 11  
 Sep 2010

*Foundations (continued)*

- single piles
- base resistance ..... **B1/VM4** 4.1.3, Figures 3 and 4
  - column action ..... **B1/VM4** 4.2
  - design pile lateral strength ..... **B1/VM4** 4.0.4
  - design pile vertical strength ..... **B1/VM4** 4.0.4
  - lateral strength ..... **B1/VM4** 4.3
    - drained cohesionless soil ..... **B1/VM4** 4.3.4
    - free head pile ..... **B1/VM4** 4.3.2 a), 4.3.3 a), 4.3.4 a)
    - restrained head pile ..... **B1/VM4** 4.3.2 b), 4.3.3 b), 4.3.4 b)
    - undrained cohesive soil ..... **B1/VM4** 4.3.2
    - undrained consolidated soil ..... **B1/VM4** 4.3.3
  - shaft resistance ..... **B1/VM4** 4.1.4, Figure 5, Table 2
  - ultimate axial compression ..... **B1/VM4** 4.0.1 to 4.0.3
  - vertical strength ..... **B1/VM4** 4.1.2
  - strength reduction factors ..... **B1/VM4** 4.7, Table 4
  - types
    - concrete ..... **B1/VM4** 5.1.1, 5.1.2
    - steel ..... **B1/VM4** 5.2.1, 5.2.2
    - timber ..... **B1/VM4** 5.3
  - shallow foundations ..... **B1/VM4** 3.0
    - concrete slab-on-ground ..... **B1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, **B1/AS3** 1.3
    - design bearing pressure ..... **B1/VM4** 3.2.1, 3.2.4
    - design bearing strength ..... **B1/VM4** 3.2.3
    - design sliding resistance ..... **B1/VM4** 3.4.6
    - local shear ..... **B1/VM4** 3.3.3
    - moment loading ..... **B1/VM4** 3.1.4
    - notation ..... **B1/VM4** 3.3.1, Figures 1 and 2
    - soils ..... **B1/VM4** 3.1.2, 3.4.3
    - strength reduction factors ..... **B1/VM4** 3.5,
    - surcharge ..... **B1/VM4** 3.1.3
    - ultimate bearing strength ..... **B1/VM4** 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
    - ultimate sliding resistance ..... **B1/VM4** 3.4.2
    - ultimate sliding strength ..... **B1/VM4** 3.4.4, 3.4.5
- see also Chimneys, foundations
- FRR  
see Fire resistance ratings
- FSP  
see Fire safety precautions

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

**G**

Garages

*see* OutbuildingsGas ..... **G3/AS1** 1.4.1**Gas as an Energy Source** ..... **G11**automatic cut-offs ..... **NZBC/G11.3.2**flued appliances ..... **NZBC/G11.3.3**gas supply authority ..... **NZBC/G11.3.6**isolation devices ..... **NZBC/G11.3.4**meters ..... **NZBC G11.3.6**location ..... **G11/AS1** 8.0over pressure protection ..... **G11/AS1** 3.0safe pressure ranges ..... **NZBC/G11.3.1**service risers ..... **NZBC/G11.3.6**supply system ..... **NZBC/G11.2, G11.3.1, G11.3.5**

Gas burning appliances

installation ..... **C/AS1** 9.2seismic restraint ..... **C/AS1** 9.2.2

Gases

*see* **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 2 gasesGas fuel appliances ..... **G4/AS1** 2.0, 3.0

Gas reticulation

another Acceptable Solution ..... **G10/AS1** 5.0cleaning ..... **G10/AS1** 1.1tailpipes ..... **G10/AS1** 1.1.3concealed piping ..... **G10/AS1** 1.4in concrete ..... **G10/AS1** 1.4.1in enclosed spaces ..... **G10/AS1** 1.4.2underground ..... **G10/AS1** 1.4.3, Table 3construction ..... **G10/AS1** 1.0corrosion control ..... **G10/AS1** 3.0design ..... **G10/AS1** 1.0.1 a)installation ..... **G10/AS1** 1.2bends and offsets ..... **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 d)risers ..... **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 c)separation ..... **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 b)supports ..... **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 a), Table 2isolating valves ..... **G10/AS1** 2.0materials ..... **G10/AS1** 1.0.1 b), Table 1pipework in ducts ..... **G10/AS1** 1.5unventilated ducts ..... **G10/AS1** 1.5.4ventilated ducts ..... **G10/AS1** 1.5.3vent lines ..... **G10/AS1** 4.0, Tables 4 and 5welded joints ..... **G10/AS1** 1.3Geology ..... **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 a)Glazing ..... **NZBC/F2.3.3; B1/AS1 7.0; C/AS1** 5.8, 6.19.11*see also* **Hazardous Building Materials**concession for sprinklers ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.7, 5.8.8dimensions ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.3 to 5.8.5fire resisting glazing ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 7.3.3 c),  
7.3.5, 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1human impact safety ..... **F2/AS1** 1.1in external walls ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.2 a)in fire doors ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.10in fire separations ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.1, 5.8.2in safe paths ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.1 c), 5.8.3 to 5.8.8, Figure 5.1in smoke control doors ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.10, 5.8.11in smoke separations and protected paths ..... **C/AS1** 5.8.9modifications to NZS 4223 ..... **F2/AS1** 1.2

	Government agencies.....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.4 (iv)</b>
	<i>see also</i> Commercial buildings	
	Government offices.....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.4 (iv)</b>
	<i>see also</i> Commercial buildings	
	Grease traps.....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.4
	capacity.....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.4.3, 3.4.4
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Ground	
	good ground.....	<b>B1/AS2</b> 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, <b>B1/AS3</b> 1.3.2
	Ground conditions.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 1.0.2, Appendix A
	Groundwater.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 1.0.2, Appendices A, B; <b>G14/VM1</b> 1.6.1
	conditions.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 1.0.2
	seasonal changes.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> A1.2.1
	tidal changes.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> A1.2.1
	Group sleeping areas.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.4
	Gully traps.....	<b>G13/AS1</b> Figures 5 and 7, <b>G13/AS2</b> 3.3, Figures 2 and 3
	construction.....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.3.1, Figure 4
	overflow relief.....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.3.2
	pipe diameters.....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 3.3.1
	Gutters.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 5.0
	gradients.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 5.3
	materials.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 5.2, Table 6
	overflow outlets.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 5.5
	sizing.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 5.1, Figures 15 and 16
	thermal movement.....	<b>E1/AS1</b> 5.4, Table 7
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Gutters, barges, and fascias.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.2, 8.1.6, 8.3.9, 8.4.14, 8.5.10, Figures 20 and 64
	internal gutters.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
	parallel hidden gutters.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
	valley gutters.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figures 37 and 51

**H**

Habitable spaces.....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.3, G6.2, G7.2; G6/AS1 1.0.2</b>
Halls	<i>see</i> Communal non-residential
Halls of residence	<i>see</i> Communal residential
Handicapped people	<i>see</i> People with disabilities
Handrails .....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.3 (j) (k), D1.3.4 (i); C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c) ; D1/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.4 b), 1.6.1, 1.7, 5.2.1 g), 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, Figures 6 and 19</b>
clearances .....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.7, Figure 26</b>
handrail profiles.....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.7 to 6.0.9, Figure 26</b>
height.....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.6, Figure 25</b>
horizontal extensions .....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.4, 6.0.5, Figure 25</b>
intermediate handrails.....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.2</b>
relevant width.....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.9, Figure 26</b>
slope.....	<b>D1/AS1 6.0.4</b>
Hazards to building elements .....	<b>F1/VM1 2.7</b>
<b>Hazardous Agents on Site.....</b>	<b>F1</b>
<i>see also</i> Site investigation	
assessment of sites .....	<b>NZBC/F1.3.1</b>
contaminants.....	<b>F1/VM1 1.0.2 c, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 g), 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.6.2, 2.6.3, Table 2</b>
degradation of building materials .....	<b>F1/VM1 2.7</b>
likely effects on people.....	<b>NZBC/F1.3.2</b>
hazardous agents .....	<b>F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.5.5, Table 2</b>
network utility operators.....	<b>F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)</b>
remedial work.....	<b>F1/VM1 2.6, Table 3</b>
risk assessment .....	<b>F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.5, 2.5.4</b>
<b>Hazardous Building Materials .....</b>	<b>F2</b>
<i>see also</i> Glazing	
asbestos .....	<b>F2/AS1 2.0</b>
brittle materials .....	<b>NZBC/F2.3.3</b>
harmful concentrations .....	<b>NZBC/F2.3.1</b>
transparent panels.....	<b>NZBC/F2.3.2</b>
Hazard category	<i>see</i> Fire hazard categories
<b>Hazardous Substances and Processes.....</b>	<b>F3</b>
Class 1 .....	<b>F3/VM1 3.1</b>
Class 2.....	<b>F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1</b>
Class 3.1 .....	<b>F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1</b>
Class 4.....	<b>F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1</b>
Class 5.....	<b>F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1</b>
control of adverse effects of ignition.....	<b>F3/VM1 3.1</b>
control of ignition .....	<b>F3/VM1 3.1</b>
isolation distances.....	<b>F3/VM1 3.2</b>
methods of construction.....	<b>F3/VM1 3.2</b>
other legislation.....	<b>F3/VM1 1.0</b>
scope.....	<b>F3/VM1 2.0</b>
secondary containment systems.....	<b>F3/VM1 3.3</b>
security.....	<b>F3/VM1 3.4</b>
explosions .....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (c)</b>
food preparation and utensil washing areas .....	<b>NZBC/G3.3.2 (b)</b>

	hazardous substances associated with building services .....	<b>NZBC/G10.1, G10.2</b>
	protected ignition sources .....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (d)</b>
	release of pressure.....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (c)</b>
	released during fire .....	<b>NZBC/C3.2 (d), C3.3.10</b>
	rendering hazardous materials harmless.....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (e)</b>
	sewers and public drains .....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (b)</b>
	signs .....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (g)</b>
	surface finishes.....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (f)</b>
	unauthorised access .....	<b>NZBC/F3.3 (a)</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Hazardous wastes.....	<b>G14/VM1</b> 1.4.1 b), 1.9.1, 2.1.4, 2.2.1 b), 2.2.4, 2.3.6, 2.4.4, 3.3
	Health camps see Communal residential	
	Hearths.....	<b>B1/AS3</b> 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3, <b>C/AS1</b> 9.5, Figure 9.3
	hearth slabs.....	<b>B1/AS3</b> 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3
	Heat detectors see Fire safety precautions	
	Heat transfer solid fuel appliances limiting heat transfer .....	<b>C/VM1</b> 1.1
	Heating see <b>Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment</b>	
	Height see Building height or Escape height	
	Height clearances .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.4, 1.4.1, Figure 3, Table 1
	Hobs.....	<b>G3/AS1</b> 1.2.1
	Hospitals .....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv); G1/AS1</b> Table 4
	see also Communal residential	
	Hostels see Communal residential	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Hot dip galvanising.....	<b>B1/AS3</b> 1.8.6
	Hot plates.....	<b>G3/AS1</b> 1.2.1
	Hot water supply see Water supplies, hot	
	Hotels.....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 9.1.1
	see also Communal residential	
	Household units .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 1.3.5, 1.3.6 b) c) e), 2.2.9 a), 3.11.6, 3.15.5, 3.15.8, 3.20.1, 6.1.1, 6.8.1, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.5.7, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.7, A2.1.1 Type 5, Table 6.2; <b>F7/AS1</b> 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.2; <b>G6/AS1</b> 1.0.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Housing.....	<b>NZBC/A1 2.0, D1.3.3, E1.3.2, G1.3.5, G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G3.3.2 (c), G7.2, G12.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.3.2; F4/AS1</b> Table 1; <b>G3/AS1</b> 1.0.1; <b>G9/AS1</b> 1.0; <b>H1/VM1</b> 1.0, 1.2, <b>H1/AS1</b> 1.0, 2.0
Amend 11 Sep 2010	detached dwellings .....	<b>NZBC/A1 2.0.2, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F7.3, F8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1</b> 1.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	group dwellings.....	<b>NZBC/A1 2.0.4, G8.2; H1/VM1</b> 1.1.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	multi-unit dwellings.....	<b>NZBC/A1 2.0.3, C3.3.2, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F8.2, G8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1</b> 1.1, 1.2, <b>H1/AS1</b> 2.1.2
	HVAC systems .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 1.5.3

## I

	Identification of non-potable water supply .....	<b>G12/AS1 4.2.1</b>
	<i>see also</i> <b>Water supplies</b>	
	Illuminance .....	<b>G7/VM1 1.0; G8/VM1 1.0, G8/AS1 1.0</b>
	measurement .....	<b>G8/VM1 1.0.1</b>
	minimum .....	<b>G8/AS1 1.0.3</b>
	Impact insulation class (IIC).....	<b>G6/VM1 2.0</b>
	In-service history .....	<b>B2/VM1 1.1</b>
	Industrial buildings .....	<b>NZBC/A1 6.0, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, E3.3.1, G1.3.5, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b), G3.3.6, G8.2, G9.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.2 (a); G1/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0.2</b>
	<b>Industrial Liquid Waste .....</b>	<b>G14</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	capacity .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.2 (a)</b>
	collection .....	<b>G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.4</b>
	location of facilities.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.4</b>
	contamination of potable water .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.2 (c)</b>
	conveyance systems.....	<b>G14/VM1 2.0</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	drainage .....	<b>G14/VM1 2.2</b>
	piping systems .....	<b>G14/VM1 2.3, Table 3</b>
	pumps.....	<b>G14/VM1 2.4, Figure 2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	corrosion.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.5.1, 1.5.2</b>
	disposal .....	<b>G14/VM1 1.1.1, Table 1, Figure 1</b>
	location of facilities.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	to a natural waterway.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.2.1 b)</b>
	to a sewer.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2</b>
	disposal systems.....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.1</b>
	hazardous wastes	
	<i>see</i> Hazardous wastes	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	industry types .....	<b>G14/VM1 1.2.2, Table 1</b>
	materials used in construction.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.5.1</b>
	odours .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.1 (c), G14.3.2 (f)</b>
	resource consents.....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.2 (d)</b>
	safety facilities .....	<b>G14/VM1 3.3.2</b>
	security.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.9</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	separation of waste.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.7.1</b>
	storage .....	<b>G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 c), 1.4</b>
	containers .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.1</b>
	location of facilities.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.4</b>
	tanks	
	<i>see</i> Tanks	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	treatment.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.1.1, 1.2, 1.2.2, 1.4, Figure 1, Table 1</b>
	location of facilities.....	<b>G14/VM1 1.4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	unauthorised access .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.2 (g)</b>
	vehicle access .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.2 (b)</b>
	Inspection chambers	
	<i>see</i> Maintenance access to drains	
	Inspection points	
	<i>see</i> Maintenance access to drains	
	Insulation	
	<i>see</i> Fire resistance ratings	
	Integrity	
	<i>see</i> Fire resistance ratings	
	Intellectually handicapped persons	
	<i>see</i> People with disabilities	



Intended Life <i>see</i> <b>Durability</b>	
Intended use .....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, D1.3.5 (a), E3.3.5, F1.3.2 (a), F3.3 (f), F4.3.2, G2.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a), G3.3.6, G5.2.1 (b), G9.2, G11.1 (c), G11.2, G12.3.5, G15.2</b>
Interface with ancillary control systems.....	<b>F7/AS1 1.5</b>
<b>Interior Environment</b> .....	<b>G5</b>
accessible reception areas.....	<b>NZBC/G5.3.4</b>
adequate activity space .....	<b>NZBC/G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b)</b> <i>see also</i> Activity space
enhanced listening systems .....	<b>NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6</b>
internal temperature.....	<b>NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1; G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2</b>
unsafe installations.....	<b>NZBC/G5.1 (c), G5.2.2, G5.3.2</b>
Interior lighting <i>see</i> <b>Artificial Light</b> .....	<b>G8</b>
Interior linings .....	<b>G3/AS1 1.6, 2.2</b>
ceilings .....	<b>G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3</b>
floors .....	<b>G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3 to 2.3.6</b>
walls .....	<b>G3/AS1 1.6, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4</b>
Interior surfaces.....	<b>G7/AS1 1.0.2 to 1.0.4, Table 1</b>
Intermediate floors <i>see</i> Floors	
<b>Internal Moisture</b> .....	<b>E3</b>
concealed spaces.....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.6; E3/AS1 3.2.2</b>
condensation.....	<b>E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.1.5, 1.3</b>
condensation channels .....	<b>E3/AS1 1.3</b>
energy efficiency.....	<b>E3/AS1 1.1.5</b>
floor surfaces .....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.3, E3.3.5</b>
free water overflow.....	<b>NZBC/E3.2 (b), E3.3.2</b>
fungal growth.....	<b>NZBC/E3.2 (a); E3/AS1 1.0.1</b>
overflow .....	<b>E3/AS1 2.0</b>
containment.....	<b>E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1</b>
floor waste.....	<b>E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2</b>
people with disabilities .....	<b>E3/AS1 3.3.2</b>
steel framing .....	<b>E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)</b>
thermal break .....	<b>E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)</b>
thermal resistance.....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.1</b>
materials and installation.....	<b>E3/AS1 1.1.3</b>
ventilation .....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2</b>
wall surfaces .....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.4, E3.3.5</b>
watersplash.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.0</b>
basins.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3</b>
baths.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3</b>
joints in linings.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2</b>
lining materials .....	<b>E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1</b>
showers.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5</b>
sinks.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3</b>
tubs.....	<b>E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3</b>
urinals .....	<b>E3/AS1 3.3.6</b>
windows.....	<b>E3/AS1 1.3.1</b>

**JKL**

Isolating valves..... **G12/AS1** 3.7.1, 5.4.2

**J**

Jetties  
see Ancillary buildings

**K**

Kerbs..... **D1/AS1** 1.5.4 a), Figure 6  
see also Ramps

Kindergartens  
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential

Kitchens  
see **Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination**

Kitchen sinks..... **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

**L**

Laboratory testing..... **B2/VM1** 1.2

Ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.0

see also Stairs and ladders

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, 5.1.7

individual rung-type ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 c), 5.4, Figure 24

clearance..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 c)

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 c)

rungs..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 a)

tread width..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 b)

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 b)

landings..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.2

length..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.5, 5.1.7

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.4

location..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.3

rung spacing..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.6

rung-type ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 b), 5.3, Figure 20

clearances..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 e)

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 d)

landings..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.2, Figure 23

rungs..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 b)

slope..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 a)

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 c)

safety enclosures..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22

step-type ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 a), 5.2, 5.2.1, Figure 19

clearances..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 e)

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 d)

horizontal openings..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 f)

slope..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 a)

treads..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 b)

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 c)

types of ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1

Landings..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (l) (m), D1.3.4 (i)**

Landslip..... **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 a)



**M**

	Maintenance .....	<b>NZBC/B2.3.1, D2.3.1 (f), D2.3.4 (c), E1.3.3 (d), E2/AS1 2.5, G10.3.6, G11.3.4, G12.3.6 (d) (e), G13.3.1 (d), G13.3.2 (d), G14.3.2 (h), G15.3.2 (c);</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	general.....	<b>E2/AS1 2.5</b>
	normal.....	<b>B2/AS1 2.1</b>
	regular maintenance.....	<b>E2/AS1 2.5.1</b>
	scheduled.....	<b>B2/AS1 2.2</b>
	Maintenance access to drains .....	<b>G13/AS2 5.7</b>
	access chambers .....	<b>E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12;</b> <b>G13/AS2 Figure 12</b>
	access points .....	<b>E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, G13/AS2 5.7, Figures 9 to 12</b>
	inspection chambers.....	<b>E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11;</b> <b>G13/AS2 Figure 11</b>
	inspection points.....	<b>E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), G13/AS2 5.7, Figure 9</b>
	location .....	<b>G13/AS2 5.7.4</b>
	rodding points .....	<b>E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10; G13/AS2 5.7.4 f), Figure 10</b>
	Marae	see Housing, group dwellings
	Masonry	see Design, masonry
	masonry buildings .....	<b>B1/AS3 1.1.1</b>
	Masonry tiles .....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	anti-ponding boards .....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.5, Figure 25</b>
	details and flashings.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.6, Figures 23-28, 73D and 73E</b>
	flashings and fixings.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.4, Tables 20-22</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	general.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.2</b>
	installation .....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.3, Tables 10, 20 and 23</b>
	materials.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.1</b>
	tile profiles.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.1.1</b>
	penetrations .....	<b>E2/AS1 8.2.7, Figures 29-31</b>
	Masonry veneer .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, 9.2, Table 18</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	cavities .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.6, Figure 73C</b>
	control joints.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.8, Figure 73A</b>
	clay bricks .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.8.1, Figure 73A</b>
	concrete bricks.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.8.2, Figure 73A</b>
	flashings .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.4</b>
	foundation support and damp proofing .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.5</b>
	general.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.2</b>
	installation .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.3, Table 23, Figure 73B</b>
	limitations .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.1</b>
	openings.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.9, Table 18D</b>
	secondary cladding .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	wall ties .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.7, Tables 18A-18C</b>
	windows and doors.....	<b>E2/AS1 9.2.10, Figures 73C and 73D</b>
	Means of Escape	see Escape routes, Evacuation time, Exitways, Final exits, Fire hazard category, Open paths, Safe paths, Safe place, Travel distance
	<b>Mechanical Installations for Access.....</b>	<b>D2</b>
	control system.....	<b>NZBC/D2.3.1 (e)</b>
	emergency conditions.....	<b>NZBC/D2.3.3</b>
	escalators .....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.3 (e)</b>
	lifts.....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.2 (c), D1.3.4 (c); D1/AS1 12.0</b>
	lighting .....	<b>NZBC/D2.3.2 (c)</b>
	loads .....	<b>NZBC/D2.3.1 (a)</b>
	location of potentially dangerous equipment .....	<b>NZBC/D2.3.4</b>
	people with disabilities .....	<b>NZBC/D2.3.5</b>
	servicing mechanical installations .....	<b>NZBC/D2.1 (b)</b>

Mechanical ventilation see <b>Ventilation</b>	
Medical consultancy rooms.....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)</b> see also Communal non-residential
<b>Membrane cappings</b> .....	<b>E2/AS1 6.5</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011   <b>Metal cappings</b> .....	<b>E2/AS1 6.4, 7.4.4, 9.9.10.2, Figure 9</b>
<b>Membrane roofs and decks</b> .....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5</b>
butyl and EPDM.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.4</b>
control joints.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.7</b>
general.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.2</b>
gutters.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.10, Figure 64</b>
installation.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.5</b>
butyl and EPDM.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.5.2</b>
plywood.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.5.1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011        junctions.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.8, Figures 57, 58 and 61-62</b>
with walls.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.8.1, Figure 62</b>
limitations.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.1, Figure 17A</b>
penetrations.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.9, Figures 59 and 60</b>
handrails.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.9.1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011        plywood substrates.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.3</b>
roof and deck drainage.....	<b>E2/AS1 8.5.6, Figures 56-64</b>
Mixing devices see Water supply, hot	
Moisture see <b>External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Surface Water</b>	
Motels.....	<b>D1/AS1 9.1.1</b> see also Communal residential
Municipal offices.....	<b>NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)</b> see also Commercial buildings
Museums see Communal non-residential	

**N**

**Natural Light** ..... **G7**  
 awareness of the outside environment ..... **NZBC/G7.1, G7.2, G7.3.2**  
 minimum illuminance ..... **NZBC/G7.3.1**

Natural ventilation  
 see **Ventilation**

Amend 11 | Network utility operators ..... **NZBC/G11.3.6, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, H1.1; F1/VM1** 2.1.1 f)  
 Sep 2010 | **G14/VM1** 1.2.1 a), **G14/AS1** 1.2.1, 1.2.2

No-sky line condition ..... **G7/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 3

Non-potable water supply  
 see Water supply

Non-return valves..... **G12/AS1** Figures 7 to 10, Table 6

Notional boundary..... **C/AS1** 7.3.13 to 7.3.15, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.7.1, Table 7.4

Nurses' or Nursing homes  
 see Communal residential

## O

- Obstructions ..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 1.5**  
 dangerous projections..... **D1/AS1 1.5.4**, Figure 6  
 isolated columns ..... **D1/AS1 1.5.5**, Figure 7  
 major projections..... **D1/AS1 1.5.3**, Figure 5  
 minor projections ..... **D1/AS1 1.5.1, 1.5.2**, Figure 4
- Occupants ..... **NZBC/D2.3.5 (b), G1.3.3 (e)**  
 Amend 11 occupant densities ..... **C/AS1 2.3.3, 3.4.5 b)**, Table 2.2  
 Sep 2010 occupant load ..... **F7/AS1 1.1.2 a)**, 2.1.1, **F6/AS1 Appendix A**  
 occupant loads – specific requirements  
 and limitations ..... **C/AS1 2.3, 3.3.2, 3.4.5, 3.4.8 c)**, 3.6.1 a) d), 3.9.11,  
 3.9.12 b) e), 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.12.2 b), 3.15.1 d),  
 3.16.3 c), 3.17.9 a) Step 1 and Step 2, 4.5.15,  
 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.4.1, 6.20.6 a), 6.20.7 a), 6.20.19,  
 6.21.5 c), 6.22.2 c) d) f), B4.1.1, Tables 3.1 and 4.1
- Occupied spaces ..... **C/AS1 3.2.1, 3.3.2 d)**, 6.6.7, 6.7.4, 6.22.3, Tables 2.1 and 6.2;  
**G4/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 a); G6/AS1 1.0.1 a)**
- Odours  
 see **Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste**
- Offices  
 see Commercial buildings
- Oil fired appliances  
 installation ..... **C/AS1 9.3**  
 seismic restraint ..... **C/AS1 9.3.2**
- Old people's homes ..... **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a) (b),**  
**G5.3.1 to G5.3.3, G5.3.5, G7.2, G12.3.4;**  
**G1/AS1 Table 4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1;**  
**G5/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Table 3**  
 see also Communal residential buildings
- Amend 11 On-site disposal ..... **G13/VM4 1.0**  
 Sep 2010 scope ..... **G13/VM4 1.1**
- Open fires ..... **C/AS1 9.5**, Figures 9.1 and 9.3
- Open paths..... **F8/AS1 3.1.1 a)**  
 see Escape routes
- Opening windows..... **F4/AS1 2.0**
- Other property ..... **C/AS1 4.3.2, 5.3.2 d)**, 6.1.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 b), 7.3.15 a), 7.7.1,  
 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.6 b), 7.9.10 d), Tables 6.1 and 7.3
- Outbuildings ..... **NZBC/A1 7.0. D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (i),**  
 Amend 11 G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; **G1/AS1 Table 4**  
 Sep 2010
- Ovens  
 see **Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination**, cooking
- Overflow ..... **E3/AS1 2.0**  
 containment ..... **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1**, Figure 1  
 floor waste ..... **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2**

## P

- Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Parapets ..... **E2/AS1** 6.0, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10  
**C/AS1** 6.12.7 b), 7.1.2 e), 7.8.1 b), 7.8.2, 7.9.2 b), Figure 7.1
- Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | capping materials ..... **E2/AS1** 6.3  
general ..... **E2/AS1** 6.2, Figure 9  
limitations ..... **E2/AS1** 6.1  
integral surface cappings ..... **E2/AS1** 6.6  
membrane cappings ..... **E2/AS1** 6.5  
metal cappings ..... **E2/AS1** 6.4, Figures 9 and 10  
parapet-to-wall junctions ..... **E2/AS1** 6.4.1, Figures 11 and 12
- Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Pedestrians  
*see* **Access Routes**
- Penetrations ..... **C/AS1** 3.12.3 e), 6.12.4, 6.12.9 d), 6.16.4 e), 6.17.1, 6.17.4,  
6.17.5, 6.17.7, 6.18.6 c), 6.18.9, 6.20.13 a)
- People with disabilities ..... **NZBC/F8.3.4**; **C/AS1** 2.4, 3.15.1 e), 3.17.1 e); **D1/AS1** 1.1.4,  
Table 9; **E3/AS1** 3.3.2; **F7/AS1** 2.1.2 d) f); **F8/AS1** 5.0;  
**G1/AS1** 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, Figures 5 to 9,  
Tables 1 and 2; **G2/AS1** 1.2.2, Figure 2; **G3/AS1** 1.5.2;  
**G5/AS1** 3.0; **G9/AS1** 2.0; **G12/AS1** 8.0
- accessible route identification ..... **F8/AS1** 5.0.1 a) b)  
accessible routes ..... **G1/AS1** 4.1.1  
electrical installations ..... **NZBC/G9.3.4**  
enhanced listening systems ..... **NZBC/G5.3.5**, **G5.3.6**  
facility identification ..... **F8/AS1** 5.0.1 b)  
food preparation and cooking facilities ..... **NZBC/G3.3.5**  
information and warning signs ..... **NZBC/F8.2 (d)**, **F8.3.4**  
listening system identification ..... **F8/AS1** 5.0.3, Figure 7  
mechanical installations for access  
*see* **Mechanical Installations for Access**
- personal hygiene facilities ..... **NZBC/G1.3.5**  
provision of laundering facilities ..... **NZBC/G2.3.4**  
usable water taps ..... **G12/AS1** Figure 18  
water supply ..... **NZBC/G12.3.9**
- Pergolas  
*see* Decks and Pergolas
- Personal Hygiene** ..... **G1**; **NZBC/G13.1 (a)**  
*see also* Sanitary fixtures
- absence of facilities ..... **NZBC/G1.1 (b)**  
access to facilities ..... **NZBC/D1.3.3 (c)**, **G1.3.5**  
location of facilities ..... **NZBC/G1.3.4**  
non-water-borne disposal system ..... **NZBC/G1.3.2 (h)**  
overflows from sanitary fixtures ..... **NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4**  
people with disabilities ..... **NZBC/G1.3.5**; **G1/AS1** 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2  
privacy ..... **G1/AS1** 6.0  
cubicles ..... **G1/AS1** 6.2, Figure 11  
line of sight ..... **G1/AS1** 6.1, Figure 10  
lobbies ..... **G1/AS1** 6.3  
unisex facilities ..... **G1/AS1** 1.1.5  
privies ..... **G1/AS1** 5.0.2  
water-borne disposal system ..... **NZBC/G1.3.2 (g)**, **G13.1 (b)**
- Piles  
*see* Foundations



<b>Piped Services</b> .....	<b>G10</b>
extreme temperatures .....	<b>NZBC/G10.1, G10.2</b>
gas pipes .....	<b>NZBC/G10.3.2, G10.3</b>
hazardous substances .....	<b>NZBC/G10.1, G10.2</b>
identification of piping systems .....	<b>NZBC/G10.3.4</b>
isolating devices .....	<b>NZBC/G10.3.6</b>
piping systems .....	<b>NZBC/G10.3.1</b>
preventing sound transmission .....	<b>G6/AS1 1.0.1 c)</b>
protection against corrosion .....	<b>NZBC/G10.3.3</b>
<b>Pipes</b>	
<i>see also</i> Discharge pipes, Discharge stacks, Vent pipes	
installation .....	<b>G11/AS1 4.0</b>
jointing methods .....	<b>G13/AS1 6.1.1</b>
materials .....	<b>G13/AS1 2.1.1, Table 1</b>
sizing .....	<b>G11/AS1 1.0</b>
pressure ranges .....	<b>G11/AS1 1.1</b>
flow velocities .....	<b>G11/AS1 1.4</b>
pressures above 1.5 kPa .....	<b>G11/AS1 1.3</b>
pressures below 1.5 kPa .....	<b>G11/AS1 1.2</b>
supports .....	<b>G13/AS1 6.2.1, Table 7</b>
thermal movement .....	<b>G13/AS1 6.3</b>
watertightness .....	<b>G13/AS1 7.0</b>
Placement of detectors .....	<b>F7/AS1 1.4</b>
Places of assembly .....	<b>D1/AS1 8.0</b>
<i>see also</i> Communal non-residential	
<b>Plumbing systems</b>	
<i>see</i> <b>Foul Water</b>	
<b>Plywood sheet</b> .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8</b>
corners .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.4</b>
external .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.4.1, Figure 122</b>
Internal .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.4.2, Figure 123</b>
finishes .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.9</b>
flashing material .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.5, Tables 20-22</b>
installation .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.3, Table 23</b>
fixings .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.3.1, Table 24</b>
joints .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.3.2, Figures 119 and 121</b>
limitations .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.1</b>
materials .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.2, Figure 119</b>
parapets and enclosed balustrades .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.7</b>
soffit details .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.6, Figure 8A</b>
windows and doors .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.8</b>
direct fixed .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.8.1, Figure 115</b>
with cavity .....	<b>E2/AS1 9.8.8.2, Figure 116</b>
<b>Pools</b>	
<i>see</i> Swimming pools	
Potable water supply	
<i>see</i> <b>Water Supplies</b>	

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

Amend 11  
Sep 2010 |

	Pressed metal tiles .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3
	barges.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
	fascias .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
Amend 12 Oct 2011	fixings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.7, Figure 33
	flashings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.8, Table 7, Figures 34-37
	gutters .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
Amend 12 Oct 2011	installation .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.2
	limitations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.1
	metal substrate .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.4
	aluminium .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.4.3
	choice of metal .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.4.1
	steel .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.4.2, Table 20
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ridges.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
	roof penetrations.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.10, Figure 29
Amend 12 Oct 2011	roof pitch .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.5, Figure 32
	tiles and accessories.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.3
	underlay .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.3.6, Table 23
	Pressure limiting valves .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.3.2, 6.2.1 c), Figure 8, Table 6
	Pressure reducing valves .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figures 7 and 9, Table 6
	Pressure regulators .....	<b>G11/AS1</b> 2.1
	Pressure relief valves .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.4.1, 6.6, Table 6
	installation .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.6.5
	relief valve drains .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.7, Figures 12 and 13
	Pressurisation of safe paths	<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions
	Principal entrance .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.1
	Prisons	<i>see</i> Communal residential
	Privacy	<i>see</i> <b>Personal Hygiene</b>
	Privies	<i>see</i> <b>Personal Hygiene</b> , privies
	Profiled metal roof claddings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4
Amend 12 Oct 2011	allowance for expansion .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.10, Table 16, Figure 39
	fixings: corrugated and trapezoidal profiles.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.8, Figure 39, Tables 11, 12, 14, 15
	requirements .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.8.1
	fixings: trough profile .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.9, Figure 40, Tables 13, 20, 21
	flashing details .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.12, Figures 43-48
	flashing requirements .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.11, Tables 21 and 22, Figures 41 and 42
	fixing flashings.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.11.1, Table 21, Figure 6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	general.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.2
	hidden gutters .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
	internal gutters .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
	limitations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.1
	materials .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	aluminium .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.3.3
	choice of metal.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.3.1, Table 20
	steel .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.3.2, Table 20
	parallel hidden gutters.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
	profile closure .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.15
	profiles.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.4, Figure 38
	roof penetrations.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.17, Table 17, Figures 21 and 53-55
	roof pitch .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.5
Amend 12 Oct 2011	stopends.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.13, Figure 49
	structure .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.6, Tables 11-15
	turn-downs at gutters .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.14
	underlay .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.7, Table 23
	valley gutters .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51

Amend 12 Oct 2011	Profiled metal wall claddings ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6
	(horizontal and vertical)
	fixings ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.6, Table 20, Figure 39
	flashings ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.7, Figures 5 and 6, Table 21
	general ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.2
	horizontal profiled metal on cavity ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9
	barges ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.4, Figure 97
	bottom of cladding ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.5, Figure 98
	cavity battens ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.2, Table 23
	corners ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.3, Figure 96
	installation ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.1, Table 23
	parapets and balustrades ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.8, Figures 101 and 102
	penetrations ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.6, Figures 53 and 69
	windows and doors ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.9.7, Figures 99 and 100
Amend 12 Oct 2011	limitations ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.1, Figure 38, Table 3
	maintenance ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.4
	materials ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.3
	aluminium ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.3.3
	choice of metal ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.3.1, Table 20
Amend 12 Oct 2011	steel ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.3.2, Table 20
	profiles ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.5, Figure 38
	vertical profile – direct fixed ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8
	barges ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8.2, Figure 92
	bottom of cladding ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8.3, Figure 93
Amend 12 Oct 2011	corners ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8.4, Figures 93 and 94
	installation ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8.1, Table 23
	penetrations ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8.5, Figures 53 and 69
Amend 12 Oct 2011	windows and doors ..... <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
	Protected paths
	see Escape routes
	Protected shafts ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 6.10.4 a), 6.12.4, 6.16, Figure 6.8
	Protecting other property
	see <b>Spread of Fire, Internal Moisture, Water Supplies</b>
	Protection of gas supply ..... <b>G11/AS1</b> 7.0
	contamination ..... <b>G11/AS1</b> 7.1
	low pressures ..... <b>G11/AS1</b> 7.2
	Protection of water supplies ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.4
	air gaps ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.5
	backflow prevention devices ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.6
	atmospheric vacuum breakers ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.6.2 d) 3.6.4 d), 3.7.1, Table 2
	double check valves ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.6.2 b), 3.7.2, Table 2
	pressure vacuum breakers ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.6.2 c), 3.6.4 c), 3.7.1, Table 2
	reduced pressure zone devices ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.6.2 a), 3.6.4 a), 3.7.2, Table 2
	cross connections ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.1, 3.2
	hazard ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.3
	installation ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.6.3, 3.6.4, 3.7.1
	testing ..... <b>G12/AS1</b> 3.7
	Purpose groups ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.1.3, 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 3.4.2 b), 4.2.7 a) c), 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.8, 4.5.13, 5.8.4, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6, 7.11.3, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 4.1, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5
Amend 11 Sep 2010	active purpose groups ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.4.1 Step 2, Table 4.1
	concessions for multiple purpose groups ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.11
	fire hazard category 4 ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 2.2.10, 5.6.11
	primary purpose group ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 2.2.7, 4.2.7 c), 4.4.1 Step 1, 4.5.5, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, 6.11.2
	residential community care ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 2.4
	sleeping purpose groups ..... <b>C/AS1</b> 3.9.12 f), 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5, 4.4.1 Step 2, 4.5.11, 5.3.2 a), 5.7.9, 6.1.2 b), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.16, 7.10.5 c), A1.2.1 Type 16, Tables 4.1 and 7.4

## Purpose groups (continued)

- CL ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.16.1, 3.16.3, 3.16.7, 3.17.1 c), 3.17.9 a), 6.3, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.18 d), 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 b)
- CM ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.17.1 c), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 b)
- CO ..... **C/AS1** 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.16.5 to 3.16.7, 4.3.3, 6.5, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- CS ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.3.1, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 b)
- IA ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.10.2, 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 4.3.3, 6.10, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3
- ID ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.3.3, 6.11, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3
- IE ..... **C/AS1** 4.3.3, 6.9, 6.20.20, 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), Tables 2.1 and 6.2
- SA ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.9, 2.3.6, 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.7, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 d)
- SC ..... **C/AS1** 2.3.6, 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.16.8, 3.17.4, 3.17.9 b) d), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.6, 6.9.6, 6.11.3, 6.20.8 b), 6.20.20, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), 7.11.1, 8.1.2, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3
- SD ..... **C/AS1** 2.3.6, 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.16.8, 3.17.4, 3.17.9 b) d), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.6, 6.9.6, 6.11.3, 6.20.8 b), 6.20.20, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), 7.11.1, 8.1.2, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3
- SH ..... **C/AS1** 1.3.3, 1.3.4, 2.2.8, 2.2.9 b), 3.5.2 b) to 3.5.4 b), 3.15.1, 3.20.1, 4.3.3, 5.9.4 c), 6.8, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.8, 7.11.4, Figure 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- SR ..... **C/AS1** 1.3.5, 2.2.9 a), 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 3.20.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.8, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.1, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 c), 7.9.19, 7.10.6 to 7.10.8, A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b)
- WF ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.15.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- WH ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- WL ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.22.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- WM ..... **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a) to 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 6.11.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

**Q R****Q**Amend 12  
Oct 2011**R**

Radioactive substances

see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 7

Ramps ..... **C/AS1** 3.1.4, 3.9.2, **D1/AS1** 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 3.0  
 accessible ramps..... **D1/AS1** 3.1.3, 6.0.3 to 6.0.4, Figure 9  
   slopes ..... **D1/AS1** Table 3  
   width..... **D1/AS1** 3.2  
 intermediate landings..... **D1/AS1** 3.3.1, Table 5  
   length..... **D1/AS1** 3.3.3  
   width..... **D1/AS1** 3.3.2  
 kerb ramps..... **D1/AS1** 3.4, Figure 10  
 landings ..... **D1/AS1** 3.3, Figure 25  
 service ramps..... **D1/AS1** 3.1.2, Figure 8, Table 4  
 slip resistance ..... **D1/AS1** 3.1.4, Table 2  
 slopes ..... **D1/AS1** 3.1, 3.1.1

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Reflectances ..... **G7/AS1** Table 2  
 high..... **G7/AS1** 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1  
 medium ..... **G7/AS1** 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1

Refuge areas

see Fire safety precautions

Refuse

see **Solid waste**Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Reinforcing steel ..... **B1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1, **B1/AS3** 1.3.2 b) c), 1.4,  
 1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.8.5, 2.2.1 a), Table 1

Relevant boundaries ..... **C/AS1** 2.2.8, 5.3.2 a), 5.4.1 g), 5.7.6 a), 5.9.4 c), 7.1.2 d),  
 7.3.1 b), 7.3.4 to 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.12 b), 7.3.15 a),  
 7.4.2, 7.5 to 7.8, 7.10.5, 7.10.6, 7.11.4, Figures 7.3,  
 7.7 to 7.9, Tables 7.1 to 7.5

Relief valve drains

see Cold water expansion valves, Temperature relief valves,  
 Temperature/pressure relief valves

Retaining walls ..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.5

Retirement villages

see Communal residential

Rodding points

see Maintenance access to drains

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Roof claddings ..... **E2/AS1** 8.0  
 general..... **E2/AS1** 8.1  
 fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.4, Tables 20-22  
 gutters ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.6, Figure 20  
   hidden gutters ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.2, Figures 27, 37, 50, 51  
   internal gutters ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.1, Figures 52 and 63  
   valley gutters ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.2, Table 8, Figures 27, 37, 50 and 51  
 limitations ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.2  
 maintenance ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.3  
 projecting eaves ..... **E2/AS1** 8.1.3.1

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

		<i>Roof claddings (continued)</i>	
Amend 12 Oct 2011		roof penetrations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.7, Tables 9 and 17, Figures 21 and 22, 29-31
		underlays .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.5, Table 23, Figure 25(b)
Amend 12 Oct 2011		underlay support .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.5.1
		weathertightness .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 8.1.1
		Roof/wall junctions .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.0
		apron flashings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.1, Table 7, Figures 7, 8B and 35
		barges .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.2, Figure 8B
		fascias .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.2, Figure 8B
Amend 12 Oct 2011		gutters .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.2, Figure 8B
		soffits .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 5.3, Figures 8A and 114
		Roofs .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.14.3, 3.14.4, 3.14.6 a), 3.16.7, 5.1.1 b), 6.12.1, 6.12.7, 6.18.5 c), 6.20.5, 6.20.11, 7.2.1 b), 7.8.1, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9, Figures 7.1 and 7.11;
		car parking and storage .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
		eaves and projections (fire safety) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 2.2.8, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5
		exterior surface finishes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.11.1
		fire spread .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.1.1, 7.9.1, 7.9.2
		fire venting .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 4.2.4, 5.4.1 i), 5.5.3, 6.3.2 b), 7.8.10 a)
		open sided buildings .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.8.8, 7.8.9, 7.8.10, Figure 7.10
		roof spaces .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.12.8, 6.18.5 b) c), 6.18.7, 6.18.8, 6.18.10
		Rubbish chutes	
		see <b>Solid Waste</b>	
		Run-off	
		estimation of run-off .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.0
		Rational Method .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.0.1
		rainfall intensity .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.2, <b>E1/AS1</b> Appendix A
		run-off coefficient .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.1, Table 1
		slope correction .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.1.3, Table 2
		time of concentration .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.2.1, 2.3
		alternative procedure .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.6, 2.3.7
		catchment slopes .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.7
		open channel flow .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.5
		pipe flow .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.4, Table 1
		time of entry .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.2
		overland flow .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.2 b), Figure 1
		road channel flow .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.2 b), Figure 2
		time of network flow .....	<b>E1/VM1</b> 2.3.3

## S

## S rating

see Fire resistance ratings

Safe paths ..... **F7/AS1** 1.3.1, 1.3.4; **F8/AS1** 3.2.3 b)  
see also Escape routes

Safe place..... **NZBC/F7.3, F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.7.1, 3.16.4, 3.16.8, 6.1.1, 6.22.7,  
A2.1.1 Type 13 and Type 16

## Safe trays

see Storage water heaters

## Safe water temperatures

see **Water Supplies**, hot

**Safety from Falling**..... **F4**

see also Barriers

	accidental falls.....	<b>NZBC/F4.2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	children.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.4 (f), F4/AS1</b> 1.2.1, Figures 1-4
	gates.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.5 (a)</b>
	impact of people.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)</b>
	low risk areas.....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 1.2.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	pressure of people.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)</b>
	opening windows.....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 2.0
Amend 11 Sep 2010	provision of barriers.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.1</b>
	retaining walls.....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 1.2.5
Amend 11 Sep 2010	roofs with permanent access.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.2</b>
	seats on decks.....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 1.2.4, Figure 6
Amend 11 Sep 2010	swimming pools.....	<b>NZBC/F4.3.3, F4.3.5</b>
	fencing.....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 2.7

## Safety of users

see **Hazardous Agents on Site, Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes, Safety from Falling, Construction and Demolition Hazards, Lighting for Emergency, Warning Systems, Signs**

Sanitary appliances..... **NZBC/G13.2; G12/AS1** 8.0.1, Table 1;  
**G13/AS1** 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2  
washing machines..... **G13/AS1** Figure 2, Table 2

Sanitary fixtures..... **NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4, G1.3.1, G1.3.2, G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b), G13.2; G12/AS1** 6.12.1, 6.14.2, Figure 20,  
Tables 1 and 3; **G13/AS1** 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

see also Basins, Bidets, **Personal Hygiene**, Showers, Urinals, WC pans

	acceptable standards.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.6
	access	
	pans.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 4.2.7
	people with disabilities.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 1.2.2, 4.1
	basins.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1
	bidets.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.4
	communal sanitary fixtures.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 3.4
	construction and installation.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.0
	locations.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 3.0, 4.2.1
	non-flushing sanitary fixtures.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 5.0
	privies.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 5.0.2
	number of fixtures required.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 1.0, Figure 1, Tables 1 to 4
	safe water temperatures.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.14.1, 6.14.2
	sanitary towel disposal.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 1.1.5 b), 1.2, 1.2.2
	showers.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.5, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2
	soil fixtures.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
	see also WC pans	
	space dimensions.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 3.1, 4.2.2, 6.2.1, Figures 4 to 9
	toilets	
	see WC pans	
	types of fixtures required.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

## Sanitary fixtures (continued)

urinals .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1
bowl urinals .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
continuous wall urinals .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.1, Figure 3
discharge system .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.2
flushing systems .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
manually operated .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.8
stall urinals .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.1, 2.3.5
surface finishes .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.4
trough urinals .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

## Sanitation

see **Personal Hygiene**

## Schools

see Communal non-residential

## SDI

see Smoke developed index

Seating .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 2.3.5, 3.3.2 k), 3.3.6 c), 3.9.3, 3.9.4, 3.9.7 to 3.9.11, 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Tables 2.2 and 3.4
open air auditoriums (purpose group CO) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1

Seats on decks .....	<b>F4/AS1</b> 1.2.4, Figure 6
----------------------	-------------------------------

Security .....	<b>NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1</b> 1.9, <b>G14/AS1</b> 1.1
----------------	--

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Seismic resistance of engineering systems .....	<b>B1/VM1</b> 13.0
---	--------------------

## Serviceability limit states

see **Structure**, limit states

## Services and facilities

see **Personal Hygiene, Laundering, Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, Ventilation, Interior Environment, Airborne and Impact Sound, Natural Light, Artificial Light, Electricity, Piped Services, Gas as an Energy Source, Water Supply, Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste**

## Sewers

see **Foul Water**

## SFI

see Spread of flame index

## Sheds

see Outbuildings

## Shops

see Commercial buildings

Showers .....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2, 3.2.2, 3.3, Figures 4 and 5; <b>G1/AS1</b> 2.5, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2; <b>G13/AS1</b> Table 2
---------------	---

## Shrinkage

see **Structure**, loads

Signs .....	<b>F8; NZBC/C2.3.3, D1.3.4 (a), D2.3.2 (d); C/AS1</b> 3.3.6 a), 3.17.11 d), <b>D1/AS1</b> 1.1.1
-------------	---

escape routes .....	<b>NZBC/F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a)</b>
exit .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.0
alternative exit .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.2.3 b)
arrows .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
backgrounds .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.3.3
colours .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.1, 3.4, 3.5.3 a) b), 4.1.3, Table 3
illumination .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.5
externally illuminated .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.5.2
internally illuminated .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.5.3
lighting supply .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.5.5
self-luminous .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.5.4
lettering .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.3.1, Table 4
location .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.1
no exit signs .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.2.3 a)
wording .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 3.2



*Signs; escape routes (continued)*

fire safety.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 4.0, 6.4
call points .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 4.1, Figure 4
colours.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 4.1.3
fire and smoke control doors .....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 4.2
lifts.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.4.1
stairs for Fire Service personnel.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.4.3, Figures 12 and 13
storage heights.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.4.2, Figure 11
hazard signs.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.0
dangerous goods.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1
class 1.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4
class 2.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4
class 3.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4
class 5.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4
class 7.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4
colour.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4 a
radiation warning symbol.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4 a), Figure 8
colour.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.3
layout.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.3
lettering.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.3, 6.1.4
location.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.1.4
electrical hazards.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.2, Figure 9
escalators and moving walks.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.6, Figure 15
floor loadings.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.3
buildings.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.3.1, Figure 10
lifts.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.3.2
passenger lifts.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.3.2 a)
service lifts.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.3.2 b)
hazardous substances and processes.....	NZBC/F3.3 (g)
identification of hazards.....	<b>NZBC/F8.2 (c)</b> , F8.3.2
machine rooms.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.5, Figure 14
non-potable water.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 6.7, Figure 16
lighting for emergency.....	<b>NZBC/F6.3.2, F8.3.3 (b)</b>
people with disabilities.....	<b>NZBC/F8.2 (d)</b> , F8.3.4; <b>F8/AS1</b> 5.0
access symbol.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 5.0.2 c), Figure 6
layout.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 5.0.2, Figure 5
listening systems.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 5.0.3, Figure 7
readability.....	<b>NZBC/F8.3.1</b>
lettering type and proportions.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 1.0, Table 1
safety.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.0, 3.2.1
caution.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.2.2, 6.1.2, 6.2.2, Figure 2
colours.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.1, Table 3
layout.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.2
prohibition and stop signs.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.2.1, 6.7.1, Figure 1
safe condition signs.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.2.3
safety symbols.....	<b>F8/AS1</b> 2.3
visibility.....	<b>NZBC/F8.3.1, F8.3.3 (b)</b>
Single escape routes	
see Escape routes	
Sinks.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2.2, Figure 3; <b>G3/AS1</b> 1.1.5, <b>G13/AS1</b> Table 2
see also Basins, Cleaners' sinks, Kitchen sinks	
Site characteristics.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> Appendix A
Site investigation.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 3.5.1, 4.7.1, Appendix A; <b>F1/VM1</b> 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
analysis.....	<b>F1/VM1</b> 2.4
assessment.....	<b>F1/VM1</b> 1.0.3, 2.5, Figure 2
detailed investigation.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> A1.3; <b>F1/VM1</b> 1.0.2 c), 2.3
history and records.....	<b>F1/VM1</b> 2.1
preliminary investigation.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> A1.2; <b>F1/VM1</b> 1.0.2 b), 2.2
previous industrial use of site.....	<b>F1/VM1</b> 2.1.1, Table 1
recording information.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> A1.4
Site specific considerations.....	<b>B2/VM1</b> 1.2

Siteworks	
<i>see</i> Design, siteworks	
Slip resistance .....	<b>D1/VM1</b> 1.0, <b>D1/AS1</b> 2.1, 3.1.4, 4.1.4 c), Table 2
Slopes .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.2
acceptable slopes .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.2.1, Figure 2
changes in level.....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.3, 1.3.1
cross falls .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 1.2.2
Slope stability.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 1.0.4
Small chimneys	
<i>see</i> Chimneys	
Smoke .....	<b>NZBC/C3.3.1, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, C3.3.7, C3.3.8</b>
Smoke alarms .....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 3.1.1, 3.1.2
alarm system.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4
location.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 3.3.1, 3.3.2
maintenance.....	<b>F7/AS1</b> 3.4.1
Smoke control.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.11.9, 6.19.1, 6.19.12, 6.19.13, Table 6.1
<i>see also</i> Fire safety precautions	
car parking.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.10.4 b), 6.10.6
doors	
<i>see</i> Doors	
in air handling systems	
<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions	
intermediate floors.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.6 a), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.3, 6.21.4
limited area atriums.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 4.5.18, 6.21.4 b), 6.22.1, 6.22.7, 6.22.8, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
long corridors .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
mechanical smoke extract	
<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions	
natural smoke venting	
<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions	
pressurisation	
<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions	
smoke reservoirs.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.22.2 f), 6.22.5, 6.22.7 to 6.22.10, A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
systems .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 6.21.5, 6.23.3 a), A2.1.1 Type 9, Type 10 Type 11 Type 17, B1.1.1, B2.2.1 Step 2, B3.1.1
ventilation.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.14.7, 6.9.6 to 6.9.8, 6.10.6
vertical safe paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.9.11, Figure 6.1
Smokecells.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.4.6 b), 4.2.2, 6.1.2 a), 6.4.1, 6.9.1, 6.12.4
Smoke detectors	
<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions	
Smoke developed index (SDI) .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d), C4.1.1 d), Table 6.2
Smoke separations .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.8.3 b), 3.11.1, 3.17.12 b), 6.1.2 c), 6.3.1, 6.6.4 b), 6.6.6 b), 6.9.6 e), 6.9.11, 6.10.1, 6.12.3, 6.12.4, 6.12.9, 6.13.1, 6.19.1, Table 6.1
glazing.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 5.8.9
smoke seals.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.12.9, 6.19.2 b), 6.19.4
Smoke spread	
<i>see</i> Smoke control	
Snow	
<i>see</i> <b>Structure</b> , loads	

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

Socket outlets	
<i>see</i> <b>Electricity</b> , people with disabilities	
Soil fixtures .....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
<i>see also</i> WC pans	
Soil properties .....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 1.0.5, 2.0.6, 2.0.7, Appendix A
Soil shrinkage and expansion .....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 3.1.2, 3.4.3, A1.2.1
Soils	
adverse moisture conditions .....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 1.0.2
Solar water heaters .....	<b>G12</b>
installation .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 5.0
pipe installation .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 5.3
pipe insulation .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 5.4
weathertightness .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 5.2, Table 4, Figures 2–9
wetback water heaters .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 5.1
location .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 4.0, 4.1
solar orientation and inclination .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 4.2, Figure 2
maintenance and durability .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 7.0
durability .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 7.2
maintenance .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 7.1
materials .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 2.0
material selection .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 2.1, Tables 1, 2 and 3
requirements .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.0
operating and safety devices .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.4
protection from frosts .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.6, Figure 1
protection from Legionella bacteria .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.5
sizing of systems .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.3
solar controller .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.2
solar water heaters and components .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 3.1.1
scope .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 1.0
exclusions .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 1.2
structural support limitations .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 1.1
structural support .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 6.0
collector support rails .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 6.5, Figures 17 and 18
elevated solar collectors parallel to the roof .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 6.4, Figures 14–16
general requirements .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 6.2, Figures 10–13
mounting collectors at different pitch to roof cladding .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 6.6, Figures 19 and 20
scope .....	<b>G12/AS2</b> 6.1
Solid fuel appliances .....	
domestic .....	<b>B1/AS3</b> 2.0
installation .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 9.1
seismic restraint .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 9.1.2
Solid plastering .....	<b>B2/AS1</b> 3.3
<b>Solid Waste</b> .....	<b>G15</b>
chutes .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.12.1, 6.16.5, 6.16.6
collection .....	<b>NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1</b>
holding .....	<b>NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1</b>
sewer .....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.3</b>
storage .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.12.1, <b>G15/AS1</b> 1.0.1, 3.0, Figure 1
alternative solution .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.1
capacity .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 1.0.1
location .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 2.0.1
floors .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.0.2
walls .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.0.3
water supply .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.0.7
windows .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.0.4, 3.0.6
space required .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 1.0.2
vehicle access .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 3.0.10
ventilation .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 1.0.3, 3.0.8, 3.0.9
temperature .....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.1 (d)</b>
waste disposal units .....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.3</b>

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

waste (rubbish) chutes .....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.2; G15/AS1</b> 4.0, Figure 2
cleaning .....	<b>G15/AS1</b> 4.0.3
odours.....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)</b>
restricted access.....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.2 (g)</b>
spread of fire .....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.2 (e)</b>

Sound insulation tests  
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**

Sound transmission class (STC)  
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**

Spandrels ..... **C/AS1** 7.1.2 e), 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2

Specified intended life  
see **Durability**

Spread of Fire

automatic fire suppression systems.....	<b>NZBC/C3.3.6</b>
see also Fire safety precautions	
automatic smoke control systems.....	<b>NZBC/C3.3.8</b>
see also Smoke control	
concealed spaces.....	<b>NZBC/C3.3.4</b>
protect adjacent property.....	<b>NZBC/C3.1 (c), C3.2 (c)</b>
resistant to spread of fire .....	<b>NZBC/C2.3.3, C3.3.1</b>
rubbish chutes.....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.2</b>
safeguard the environment.....	<b>NZBC/C3.1 (d), C3.2 (d)</b>
safety while evacuating .....	<b>NZBC/C3.1 (a)</b>
see also <b>Means of Escape</b>	

Amend 11 | Spread of flame index (SFI) ..... **C/AS1** 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d),  
Sep 2010 | C4.1.1 b), Table 6.2

Sprinklers  
see Fire safety precautions

Stability  
see Fire resistance ratings, **Structure**

Stadiums  
see Communal non-residential

Staircase  
see Stairways

Stairs  
see Stairways

Stairs and ladders..... **C/AS1** 3.1.4, 3.4.1 a), 3.4.7, 3.9.14, 3.15.9, Figures 3.6, 3.10 and 3.21  
curved and spiral stairs ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.5, 3.4.7 a) b)  
external stairways ..... **C/AS1** 3.14.6 c), 3.14.7, 3.15.4, 3.15.7, Figures 3.22 and 3.23  
stairways ..... **C/AS1** 3.3.3, 3.3.4, 3.3.6 b), 3.4.5, 3.11.8, 3.12.3, 3.15.6, 5.8.2 c),  
6.9.3, 6.9.10, 7.5.7

Stairways..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (f) to (i), D1.3.4 (g) (h); D1/AS1** 4.0  
see also **Access Routes**, accessible routes and ladders  
accessible stairs..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.7, 4.1.8 b), 4.2.1,  
6.0.1 to 6.0.4, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8  
common stairs ..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.8, 4.2.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8  
curved stairs..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.3, 4.4, Figure 17  
landings ..... **D1/AS1** 4.3, 4.3.1, 4.3.6 c), 4.6.2 c), Figures 14 and 25  
  direction changes..... **D1/AS1** Figure 16  
  length..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)  
  maximum rise..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.2, Table 7  
  obstructions..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.5, Figure 15  
  width..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.3  
lighting..... **D1/AS1** 4.6, 4.6.2, Table 8  
pitch..... **D1/AS1** 4.1, Figure 11, Table 6  
pitch lines ..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.3, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, 4.5.2

- private stairs ..... **D1/AS1** 4.6.2, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8  
     main ..... **D1/AS1** Figure 11, Table 6  
     minor ..... **D1/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6  
 risers ..... **D1/AS1** 4.1, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.1.8, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, Figures 11 and 12, Table 6  
     secondary ..... **D1/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6  
 service stairs ..... **D1/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8  
 slip resistance ..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.4 c), Table 2  
 spiral stairs ..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.3, 4.4.1  
 treads ..... **D1/AS1** 4.1, 4.1.2 to 4.1.7, 4.5.1, 4.6, Figures 11 to 13, Table 6  
     tapered treads ..... **D1/AS1** 4.4, Figure 17  
 visibility ..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.6, 4.6, Table 8; **G8/AS1** 1.0.3  
 width ..... **D1/AS1** 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 6.0.1  
 winders ..... **D1/AS1** 4.5, Figure 18
- Standard test  
     see Test methods
- Steel  
     see Design, steel
- Storage water heaters ..... **NZBC/H1.3.4**; **G12/AS1** 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.5, 6.7.2, 6.6.4, 6.8 to 6.11, Table 5; **H1/AS1** 5.0  
     see also Water heaters  
     drain pipes ..... **G12/AS1** 6.11.3 c)  
     open vented ..... **G12/AS1** 6.3.2, Figures 6 and 7  
         free outlet type ..... **G12/AS1** 6.1.2, 6.4.2  
     mains pressure supply ..... **G12/AS1** 6.2.1, Figure 8, Table 5  
     tank supply ..... **G12/AS1** 6.1.1, Figure 6, Table 5  
     safe trays ..... **G12/AS1** 5.2.3, 6.11.3  
     seismic restraint ..... **G12/AS1** 6.11.5, Figure 4  
     unvented  
         see Storage water heaters, valve vented  
     valve vented ..... **G12/AS1** 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8
- Storage water tanks  
     see Tanks
- Strainers (filters) ..... **G12/AS1** 6.2.3
- Structural fire endurance rating (S)  
     see Fire resistance ratings
- Structural integrity  
     see **Structure, Structural Stability During Fire**
- Structural Stability During Fire**  
     consequential collapse ..... **NZBC/C4.3.3**  
     fire hazards ..... **NZBC/C4.3.1**  
     fire intensity ..... **NZBC/C4.3.1**  
     fire load ..... **NZBC/C4.3.1**  
     fire resistance ..... **NZBC/C4.3.1, C4.3.2, C4.3.3**
- Structural stability  
     see Fire resistance ratings
- Structure** ..... **B1**  
     building instability ..... **NZBC/B1.1**  
     collapse ..... **NZBC/B1.2**  
     damage ..... **NZBC/B1.2**  
     deflections ..... **NZBC/B1.2**  
     demolition ..... **NZBC/B1.3.6**  
     design  
         concrete ..... **B1/VM1** 3.0  
         drains  
             see Drains  
         foundations  
             see Foundations  
     loadings ..... **B1/VM1** 2.0  
         earthquake ..... **B1/AS3** 1.9, Table 2  
         limit state ..... **B1/VM1** 2.2.4, 7.1

Amend 11  
 Sep 2010

Amend 11  
 Sep 2010

## Structure (continued)

	masonry.....	<b>B1/VM1</b> 4.0, <b>B1/AS1</b> 2.0, <b>B1/AS3</b> 1.3.3
	siteworks.....	<b>B1/VM1</b> 10.0
	steel.....	<b>B1/VM1</b> 5.0
	strength reduction factor.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4
	timber.....	<b>B1/VM1</b> 6.0, <b>B1/AS1</b> 3.0
	<i>see also</i> Timber barriers	
	windows	
	<i>see</i> Windows	
	failure.....	<b>NZBC/B1.1</b>
	limit states	
	serviceability limit state.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.1</b> , <b>B1.3.2</b> , <b>B1.3.5</b>
	ultimate limit state.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.1</b> , <b>B1.3.2</b> , <b>B1.3.5</b>
	loads.....	<b>NZBC/B1.2</b> , <b>B1.3.3</b>
	creep.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	cyclic loads.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	differential movement.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	dynamic loads.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	earth pressure.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	earthquake.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	seismic resistance of building services.....	<b>B1/VM1</b> 14.0
	explosion.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	liquid.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	shrinkage.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	snow.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	wind.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.3</b>
	sitework.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.6</b> , <b>B1.3.7</b>
	stability.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.6</b> , <b>B2.3.1</b> ; <b>D1/AS1</b> 1.6
	tanks.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.7, Figure 4
	seismic restraint.....	<b>G14/VM1</b> 2.3.2
	temporary support.....	<b>NZBC/B1.3.5</b>
	vibrations.....	<b>NZBC/B1.2</b>
	Stucco.....	<b>B1/AS1</b> 5.0, <b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3
	bottom of stucco.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.8, Figure 75
Amend 12 Oct 2011	finishes.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.7
	installation.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.4
	general.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.4.1
	movement control joints.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.4.2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	limitations.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.1, Figure 74
	non-rigid plaster backings.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.5
	installation of wall underlays.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.5.1, Table 23
Amend 12 Oct 2011	rigid plaster backings.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.6
	fibre cement sheet backing.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.6.2
	plywood backing.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.6.1
	parapets and enclosed balustrades.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.9
Amend 12 Oct 2011	structure.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	stucco cladding system.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.3, Tables 23 and 24, Figure 74
	windows and doors.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.3.10, Figure 76
	Subsidence.....	<b>B1/VM4</b> A1.2.1 (a)
	Suites	
	<i>see</i> Firecells	
	Surface finishes.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.1.2 e), 6.20, Tables 6.2 and 6.3
	ceilings.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a)
	exceptions.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.20.4
	exterior surfaces.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 7.1.2 c), 7.8.6, 7.11
	flooring and floor coverings.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.20.8 to 6.20.10, 6.20.14, C2.1
	wharehenui.....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 2.2

Surface Water .....	<b>E1</b>
<i>see also</i> Run-off, drains	
2% probability storm	
{50 year return period} .....	<b>NZBC/E1.3.1</b>
10% probability storm	
{10 year return period} .....	<b>NZBC/E1.3.2</b>
drainage systems .....	<b>NZBC/E1.3.3</b>
Suspended flexible fabrics .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.20.1, 6.20.16 to 6.20.19, C3.1, Table 6.2
Swimming pools	
<i>see</i> <b>Safety from Falling</b>	

## T

### Tanks

Amend 11 Sep 2010	industrial liquid waste .....	<b>G14/VM1</b> 1.4.1 b), 1.4.2, 3.0
	seismic restraint .....	<b>G14/VM1</b> 3.2.1
	water tanks .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2, 6.2.1
	access .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.5, Figure 4
	covers .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.4
	location .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.1
	overflow pipes .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.2, Figure 4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	safe trays .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.3, Figure 4
	seismic restraint .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.7, Figure 4
	structural support .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.2.7, Figure 4
	water storage tanks .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 5.1

### Taverns

*see* Communal non-residential

### Temperature

*see* **Electricity, Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment, Outbreak of Fire, Piped Services, Solid Waste, Structure, load, Water Supplies**

### Temperature control

*see* **Interior Environment**, interior temperature

Temperature/pressure relief valves .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.4.1, Figure 8, Table 6
installation .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.6.5
relief valve drains .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.7, Figures 12 and 13

### Test methods .....

	fire properties of external wall cladding systems .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C8.1
	fire resistance .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C6.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	fire resisting closures .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C7.1
	flame barriers .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C9.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	flammability of floor coverings .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C2.1
	flammability of membrane structures .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C3.1
	flammability of suspended flexible fabrics .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C3.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	non-combustibility of materials .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C5.1
	properties of lining materials .....	<b>C/AS1</b> C4.1

### Theatres .....

*see also* Communal non-residential

### Thermal break .....

**E3/AS1** 1.1.4 d)

### Thermal resistance (R-value) .....

**E3/AS1** 1.1; **H1/VM1** 1.4, **H1/AS1** 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3  
    alternative solution .....

**E3/AS1** 1.1.5

    materials and installation .....

**E3/AS1** 1.1.3

### Thermostats .....

**G12/AS1** 6.3.1, 6.5.1

### Thresholds .....

**D1/AS1** 1.3.2

### Timber .....

**B2/AS1** 3.2

*see also* Design, timber, Timber weatherboards

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Timber barriers..... **B1/AS2** 1.0  
*see also* Barriers and **Safety from Falling**

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Timber weatherboards..... **E2/AS1** 9.4  
finishes ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.9  
horizontal weatherboards ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.3, 9.4.4  
external corners..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.4, Figures 77 and 78  
fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.3, Table 24  
horizontal laps..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.1  
internal corners..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.5, Figure 79  
joints ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.4.2  
installation ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.3, Table 23  
fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.3.1, Tables 20 and 24  
limitations ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.1  
horizontal weatherboards..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.3, Table 3  
vertical weatherboards..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.2, Table 3  
weatherboard profiles ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.1  
materials ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.2, Table 23  
parapets and enclosed balustrades ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.8  
vertical weatherboards ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.1.2, 9.4.5  
corners (external and internal) ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.5.3, Table 7, Figures 79 and 80  
fixings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.5.2, Table 24  
laps ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.5.1  
windows and doors in cavity walls ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.7, Figures 17C, 85 and 86  
windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.6,  
Figures 17D, 81-84

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 | Time-share accommodation  
*see* Communal residential

Toilets  
*see* **Personal Hygiene**, WC Pans

Toxic substances  
*see* **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 6

Transport terminals  
*see* Commercial buildings

Travel distance ..... **NZBC/C2.3.1 (d), C2.3.2, C3.3.1 (a)**

Tunnels  
*see* Ancillary buildings

Turnstiles  
*see* Doors



## U

Ultimate limit states

see **Structure**, limit states

Universities

see Communal non-residential

- Unprotected areas ..... **C/AS1** 3.14.3, 3.14.6, 5.1.1 b), 7.1.2 d), 7.3, 7.4.1 a),  
7.4.2, 7.5.2 to 7.5.6, 7.5.8, 7.6.4, 7.7.1, 7.7.3, 7.7.5,  
Step 2 and Step 3, 7.8.9, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.10, 7.9.11,  
7.9.13, Figures 7.3 to 7.5, Tables 7.2 to 7.4  
fire resisting glazing (Type B)..... **C/AS1** 5.8.2 a), 7.4.1 a),  
7.4.2 to 7.4.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1  
small openings (Type A)..... **C/AS1** 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2, 7.4.4, Figure 7.4  
uPVC pipe..... **G13/AS3** 1.0  
Urinals ..... **E3/AS1** 3.3, 3.3.6; **G1/AS1** 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1; **G13/AS1** Table 2  
bowl urinals ..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5  
continuous wall urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, Figure 3  
discharge system ..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.2  
flushing systems ..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5  
manually operated..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.8  
stall urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, 2.3.5  
surface finishes..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.4  
trough urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1 to 2.3.3  
Utensil washing..... **G3/AS1** 1.1.1

## V

	Vacuum relief valves .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> Table 6
	Vehicles .....	<b>NZBC/D1.1, D1.2.2, D1.3.1 (d) (e), D1.3.5, G14.3.2 (b);</b> <b>D1/AS1</b> 10.0, <b>G14/VM1</b> 1.8, 2.1.5; <b>G15/AS1</b> 3.0.10
Amend 11 Sep 2010	access .....	<b>G14/VM1</b> 1.8, 2.1.5
	car parking areas .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 10.1
	accessible car parking spaces .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 10.1, 10.2.1
	commercial vehicles .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 11.0.2
	loading spaces .....	<b>D1/AS1</b> 11.0.2
	Vent pipes .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.3.2, 6.8; <b>G13/AS1</b> 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 12, Table 5; <b>G13/AS2</b> Figures 5 and 6
	diameter .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.8.2, <b>G13/AS1</b> Table 6
	fixture vent pipes .....	<b>G13/AS1</b> 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11, Tables 5 and 6
	gradient .....	<b>G13/AS1</b> 5.4
	height .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.8.2 d)
	installation .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.9.1; <b>G13/AS1</b> 5.5 to 5.7, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11
	insulation .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.8.3
	relief vent pipes .....	<b>G13/AS1</b> 5.6, Figure 7
	termination .....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.8.2 c); <b>G13/AS1</b> 5.7.3, Figure 12
	Ventilation .....	<b>G4; NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); C/AS1</b> 6.9.6; <b>E3/AS1</b> 1.0.1, 1.2;
Amend 11 Sep 2010	airflow control .....	<b>NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1</b> 3.0, <b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.1 b)
	air handling systems .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.3.1 b)
	air purity .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/VM1</b> 2.0
	bacteria, pathogens and allergens .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.2</b>
	balconies, bridges and open stairways .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 3.14.7
	car park .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.4
	combined natural and mechanical .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	contaminated air	
	discharge systems .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.1 f)
	disposal .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.4</b>
	removal .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.3</b>
	cross-ventilation for car parking .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.10.4, 6.10.6
Amend 11 Sep 2010	drains .....	<b>G13/AS2</b> 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
	extract ventilation .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.1 c)
	fixed combustion appliances .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.5</b>
	flues .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.3, 2.4
	gas burning appliances .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 9.2.2
	gas-fuel appliances .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.0
	another solution .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 3.0
	draught diverters .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.3.2
	flue construction .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.3
	flue location on dwellings .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	mechanical ventilation .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.2
	natural ventilation .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 2.1
	maximum occupancy .....	<b>NZBC/G4.2</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	mechanical ventilation systems .....	<b>NZBC/C3.3.7, G4.3.2; G4/AS1</b> 1.5, 2.2
	natural .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2.1
	household units and accommodation units with one external wall .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.3
	natural smoke ventilation	
	see Fire safety precautions	
	number of air changes .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.1</b>
	oil fired appliances .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 9.3.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	outdoor air supply .....	<b>NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/AS1</b> 1.5.1 a) d)
	passive stack ventilators .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.3.7
	positive and negative pressure .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.5
	prevention of internal moisture .....	<b>NZBC/E3.3.1</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	rate .....	<b>G4/VM1</b> 1.0.1
	recirculated air systems .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.5.1 e)
	safe paths .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
	solid fuel appliances .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 9.1.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	trickle ventilators .....	<b>G4/AS1</b> 1.3.9
	ventilation rate .....	<b>G4/VM1</b> 1.0

Vermin-proofing .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8.3
Vibrations see <b>Structure</b>	
<b>Visibility in Escape Routes</b> .....	<b>F6/AS1</b>
duration .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.6
documentation .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.7
equipment .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.8
illuminance .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.3
installation .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.8
location .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.2
maintenance .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.8
method of measurement .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.4
modifications to AS 2293.1: 2005 and AS 2293.3: 2005 .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> Appendix B
modifications to NZS 6104 .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> Appendix C
light output .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.5
scope .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.1
start-up .....	<b>F6/AS1</b> 1.5

Amend 11  
Sep 2010

## W

Walls .....	<b>NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), C3.3.1, C3.3.5, E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E3.3.4, E3.3.5, G6.3.1; C/AS1</b> 5.3.1, 5.7.2, 6.10.6, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.16.2, 6.18.5 c), 6.20.3, 6.20.4 d) f), 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a), 7.8.9, 7.9.5, 7.9.18, Table 6.2;
cavities and concealed spaces .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.18.4, Figures 6.11 and 6.12
curtain walls .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.18.4, 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
external walls .....	<b>NZBC/E2.3.2</b> see also Unprotected areas
floor/wall junctions .....	<b>G6/AS1</b> 1.0.3, Figure 5
internal/external wall junctions .....	<b>G6/AS1</b> 1.0.3, Figure 4
surface finishes .....	<b>NZBC/C3.3.1</b>
theatre proscenium walls .....	<b>C/AS1</b> 6.3.1, 6.3.2 f), 6.19.9, 6.19.10, 6.19.11, Figure 6.13
wall assemblies .....	<b>G6/AS1</b> 1.0.3, Figure 2
Wall/Roof junctions see Roof/wall junctions	
Wall claddings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 3.3, 9.0
air seals .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.6, Figure 81
barriers to airflow .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.4, Table 23
bottom of cladding .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.3, Tables 7 and 18, Figure 65
concrete slabs .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.3.1, Figure 65
concrete ground slabs (except masonry veneer) .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.3.3, Table 18
garages and openings to garages .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.3.4, Tables 18 and 23, Figure 65
masonry veneer clearances .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.3.2, Table 18, Figure 73D
timber floor framing .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.3.5, Table 18
drained cavities .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8
cavity battens .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8.4
limitations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8.1
requirements .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8.2, Table 23, Figures 66 and 67
vermin-proofing .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
wall framing behind cavities .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.8.5
general .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1
limitations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.1, Table 3
maintenance .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.2
penetrations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.9
inter-storey junctions .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.9.4, Figure 70
other cavity penetrations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.9.2
penetrations through cavities .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.9.1
pipes and service penetrations .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.9.3, Figures 68 and 69
wall underlay .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.7, Tables 3 and 23
wall underlays to wall openings .....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.5, Figures 72A and 72B

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

Amend 12  
Oct 2011

	Wall claddings (continued)	
	windows and doors.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10
Amend 12 Oct 2011	attachments.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.10.8
	closed cell foam tape.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.7
Amend 12 Oct 2011	head flashings.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71
	scope.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.1
	treatment of opening.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B, 116, Tables 7 and 20
	window and door heads.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
Amend 12 Oct 2011	window and door jambs.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.6
	window sills.....	<b>E2/AS1</b> 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D
	Warehouses	
	see Industrial buildings	
	<b>Warning Systems</b> .....	<b>F7</b>
	see also Alarm systems	
	combined fire detection and warning system.....	<b>NZBC/F7.3</b>
	Wash-down areas.....	<b>G3/AS1</b> 2.3
	Washing machines	
	see Sanitary appliances	
	Waste chutes	
	see <b>Solid Waste</b>	
	Waste disposal units.....	<b>NZBC/G15.3.3; G13/AS1</b> Figure 2, Table 2
	Waste pipes	
	see Discharge pipes, Pipes	
	Water	
	see <b>External Moisture, Foul Water, Internal Moisture, Surface Water, Water Supplies</b>	
	Water heaters.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.1, Table 5
	installation.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.11
	instantaneous water heaters.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.1.1,
	solar water heaters.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.1.1, 6.15, Table 5
	storage water heaters	
	see Storage water heaters	
	wet back water heaters.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.13, Figure 15
	Water main.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
	Water seals.....	<b>G1/AS1</b> 2.1.1 c), Figure 2; <b>G13/AS1</b> 1.0.3, 3.2.1, Figure 1, Table 1, <b>G13/AS2</b> 3.3.1 d)
	Water splash.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.0
	basins.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2.2, Figure 3
	baths.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2.2, Figure 3
	lining materials.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.1, Figure 1
	joints in linings.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2, Figure 2
	showers.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
	sinks.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2.2, Figure 3
	tubs.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.2.2, Figure 3
	urinals.....	<b>E3/AS1</b> 3.3.6
	<b>Water Supplies</b> .....	<b>G12</b>
	access for maintenance.....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.6 (d)</b>
	backflow prevention devices.....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)</b>
	cold.....	<b>G3/AS1</b> 1.1.4
	drinking water.....	<b>NZBC/G12.2</b>
	energy efficiency.....	<b>NZBC/H1.2, H1.3.4</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	hot.....	<b>G3/AS1</b> 1.1.4, Figure 1; <b>G12/AS1</b> 6.0
	mixing devices	
	tempering valves.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.14.2, Figure 16
	pipe sizes.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.12, Table 4
	safe water temperatures.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 6.14
	isolation of system.....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)</b>
	leakage.....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.6 (c)</b>
	laundries.....	<b>G2/AS1</b> 1.1.1, 1.1.2
	mains.....	<b>G12/AS1</b> 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1

	non-potable water .....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.2; G12/AS1 4.1</b>
	outlet identification .....	<b>G12/AS1 4.2.1, Figure 3</b>
	people with disabilities .....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.9</b>
Amend 11 Sep 2010	potable water .....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.1, G12.3.6 (a), G14.3.2 (c); G12/AS1 3.0; G14/VM1 1.6.3</b>
	pressure vessels .....	<b>NZBC/G12.1 (b), G12.3.7 (a)</b>
	sanitary appliances .....	<b>NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)</b>
	sanitary fixtures .....	<b>NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)</b>
	solid waste areas .....	<b>G15/AS1 3.0.7, 4.0.3</b>
	water storage vessels .....	<b>NZBC/G12.3.7, G12.3.8</b>
	<i>see also</i> Storage water heaters	
	water temperature .....	<b>NZBC/G12.1 (b) (c), G12.3.3 to G12.3.5, G12.3.7 (b), G12.3.8</b>
	Water supply systems .....	<b>G12/VM1 1.0, G12/AS1 5.0</b>
	installation .....	<b>G12/AS1 5.2</b>
	anchor points .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.1.2</b>
	electrochemical compatibility .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.1.1</b>
	in concrete or masonry .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.3.3</b>
	pipe supports .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.1</b>
	spacing .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.1.3, Table 7</b>
	pipes below ground .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.3.2</b>
	protection from damage .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.3</b>
	protection from freezing .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.2</b>
	protection from frosts .....	<b>G12/AS1 3.6.3</b>
	maintenance facilities .....	<b>G12/AS1 5.2</b>
	materials .....	<b>G12/AS1 2.0, Table 1</b>
	pressure limitations .....	<b>G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)</b>
	temperature limitations .....	<b>G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)</b>
	pipe size .....	<b>G12/AS1 5.3, Table 4</b>
	flow rates .....	<b>G12/AS1 5.3.1, Table 3</b>
	watertightness .....	<b>G12/AS1 7.5</b>
	Water tanks	
	<i>see</i> Tanks	
	Water traps .....	<b>G13/AS1 3.0, Figure 1</b>
	dimensions .....	<b>G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figure 1</b>
	location .....	<b>G13/AS1 3.3</b>
	multiple outlets .....	<b>G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2</b>
	WC pans .....	<b>G1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.1, 4.2.2, Figures 4 to 6, Table 1; G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figures 1 and 6, Tables 2 and 5,</b>
	cisterns .....	<b>G1/AS1 2.2.2</b>
	cubicles .....	<b>G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11</b>
	flushing systems .....	<b>G1/AS1 2.1.1 f), 2.2, 4.2.6</b>
	surface finish .....	<b>G1/AS1 2.1.1 a)</b>
	water seals .....	<b>G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2</b>
	Weather stops .....	<b>D1/AS1 1.3.2</b>
	Weatherboards	
	<i>see</i> Timber weatherboards and fibre cement weatherboards	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Weathertightness .....	<b>E2/AS1 2.1, 8.1.1</b>
	Weathertightness risk factors .....	<b>E2/AS1 3.0</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	establishing the risk .....	<b>E2/AS1 3.1, Figure 1</b>
	building envelope risk scores .....	Table 2
	examples .....	<b>E2/AS1 3.4, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.3, Tables 4-6, Figures 2-4</b>
	definitions of risk .....	<b>E2/AS1 3.1.1, Table 1</b>
Amend 12 Oct 2011	risk score .....	<b>E2/AS1 3.1.2, Table 2</b>
	wall claddings .....	<b>E2/AS1 3.3, Table 3</b>
	Whare Runanga	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<i>see</i> Communal non-residential, assembly service	

Wheelchairs ..... **D1/AS1** 7.0.1  
*see also* People with disabilities, Accessible routes  
spaces for wheelchairs ..... **D1/AS1** 8.1, 8.1.2, Figure 30  
wheelchair access ..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (b) (d) (e)**

Wind  
*see* **Structure**, loads

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

Amend 11  
Sep 2010 |

Windows and doors.....**B1/VM1** 12.0; **C/AS1** 3.1.4, 6.20.4 c); **E2/AS1** 9.1.10, 9.2.10, 9.3.10,  
9.5.4, 9.6.8.6, 9.6.9.7, 9.7.6, 9.8.8, 9.9.9; **E3/AS1** 1.3.1;  
**G7/AS1** 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, 2.0.1,  
Figures 1 and 2; **G15/AS1** 3.0.4, 3.0.6

*see also* **Natural Light**  
closed cell foam tape ..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.7  
fire windows  
*see* Glazing  
glazing..... **B1/AS1** 7.0  
head flashings ..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

scope ..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.1  
treatment of opening..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B and 116, Tables 7 and 20  
used for escape..... **C/AS1** 3.3.6 d), 3.18, 6.20.6 b), Figure 3.32  
vertical profile: windows and doors..... **E2/AS1** 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100  
window and door heads..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.3, Figure 71  
windows and doors in cavity walls ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.7, 9.5.4.2, 9.8.8.2, 9.9.9,  
Figures 85, 86, 91, 116 and 128  
windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards ..... **E2/AS1** 9.4.6, 9.5.4.1, 9.8.8.1,  
9.9.9, Figures 81-84,  
90, 115 and 127

Amend 12  
Oct 2011 |

window and door jambs..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6, Table 7  
window and door sills ..... **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D

Work camps ..... **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d);**  
**G2/AS1** Table 1; **G3/AS1** 1.0.1  
*see also* Communal residential, community service